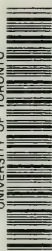


EASY·LATIN  
FOR SIGHT READING

D'OOGÉ

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO




3 1761 01528320 3

PA  
2095  
B64



G. W. Hatcher



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

Lal.Gr  
D6915e

# EASY LATIN FOR SIGHT READING

FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS

## SELECTIONS

FROM

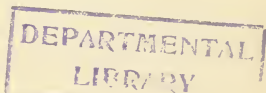
RITCHIE'S FABULAE FACILES, LHOMOND'S  
URBIS ROMAE VIRI INLUSTRES, AND  
GELLIUS' NOCTES ATTICAE

EDITED, WITH INTRODUCTION, MODELS  
FOR WRITTEN LESSONS, IDIOMS, AND ANNOTATIONS

BY

B. L. D'OOGHE

MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL SCHOOL



182232  
9.7.23.

BOSTON, U.S.A., AND LONDON  
GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS  
The Athenæum Press

1897

*[Faint, illegible handwritten text]*

PA  
2095  
B64

COPYRIGHT, 1897  
By B. L. D'OUGE  
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

## P R E F A C E.

---

THIS little book is put forth with the hope that it will lead to more sight reading in secondary schools. While theoretically all agree that nothing is more helpful and inspiring, practically but few give it the attention it deserves. When sight reading is made to mean loose guessing and inexact interpretation of Latin as a refuge from hard study and scholarly habits, nothing can be urged in its defense ; but properly understood as a method by which one may be safely and surely led to read and understand Latin as Latin, to take in its thoughts easily in the order in which they are presented, with no conscious appeal to English, we must all acknowledge its primary importance.

Poor results in the study of Latin are largely due to misdirected energy. Students learn much about the language, but do not learn the language itself. They get the form, but not the substance. While no language can be learned without knowing its grammar and syntax, the amount of such knowledge that is necessary to one who seeks only the meaning of the text is much smaller than is often supposed ; and however valuable close grammatical analysis may be for other purposes, it may, and no doubt often does, seriously impede progress towards rapid reading and intelligent appreciation. The man who parsed Milton's "Paradise Lost"

from beginning to end can hardly have felt the poet's inspiration, whatever he may have learned of formal grammar.

Students can never really enter the field of Latin literature nor read it widely and appreciatively who cannot understand it as it is written, without change of order and without formal translation. We translate far too much, we read the original far too little. Students should be taught to read, and to understand as they read, without translation, from the very beginning. The aim from the outset should be to learn to read Latin. This is not so difficult as it seems, and pupils in secondary schools can with proper instruction acquire considerable facility in this direction.

Many of us have felt the lack of just the right kind of reading-matter for beginners to grapple with. The ancients did not write for babes and sucklings, and the Latin offered for translation at sight is mostly meat too strong for young beginners. Latin that is too hard is worse than useless, and leads to nothing but discouragement and self-depreciation. Students must feel that they can conquer and are conquering from day to day. It has seemed to me that for a well-graded series of selections for secondary schools nothing better can be found than Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles*, Lhomond's *Urbis Romae Viri Inlustres*, and Gellius' *Noctes Atticae*. The selections have accordingly been made from these three sources. The *Fabulae Faciles* may be used to advantage during the latter half of the first year and the first part of the second; the selections from *Viri Romae* come next in difficulty, and then those from Gellius. It has been my purpose to afford sufficient and suitable material for the entire preparatory course. It is hoped that, far from being an added burden to students already overworked, the



use of this book will greatly facilitate the progress through the required work.

From considerable experience with classes in sight reading and from the experience and publications of others, I have compiled and formulated in a few introductory pages some hints and suggestions that I have found most useful, practically, in teaching the art of reading Latin. These are followed by a few models for written lessons, which will be of some use in fixing the foregoing suggestions. In these I have followed, in the main, the method which Prof. W. G. Hale describes in his well-known pamphlet, "The Art of Reading Latin." While Professor Hale's method is admirable in many respects, it is possible for less skillful teachers to overdo the science to the detriment of the art, *i.e.*, to perplex the mind with unnecessary questions as to possible or probable constructions that only delay the successful progress of the interpretation. I do not, therefore, think it well to continue such close analysis by written work, after the fundamental principles of Latin order and syntax have been well mastered.

The text of the selections from *Viri Romae* is that of Holzer's tenth edition (Stuttgart, 1889); Hertz (Leipsic, 1886) has been followed in those from Gellius. For the material from *Fabulae Faciles*, I am indebted to Mr. F. Ritchie, of Seven Oaks, England, who kindly placed his excellent little book at my disposal. Barring a few simplifications, and some modifications in orthography and punctuation, the texts have been followed without variation. As authority for quantities the last edition (1895) of Lewis' Elementary Latin Dictionary has been followed, as the most widely adopted, if not in all cases the best standard.

The notes consist in the main of synonyms, antonyms, and Latin paraphrases and definitions. In these the words used are such as are common in Caesar, Cicero, and Vergil, the aim being to increase the student's vocabulary and thereby his ability to read those authors. English translations are given only where no happy and easy Latin equivalent suggested itself.

It is suggested that teachers make frequent use of the selections for oral reading. Our methods of teaching are apt to neglect the ear, a most powerful instrument in the interpretation of thought, and to train the eye only. Often good students will fail to understand the simplest Latin when it is read to them. These selections will be found of about the right difficulty for this important discipline.

Full and grateful acknowledgment is made to all who have added to the value of these pages by their publications in this field. Many helpful suggestions have been drawn from these sources. Special thanks are due to Dr. John Tetlow, head-master of the Boston Girls' High and Latin Schools, for many valuable criticisms; and to Principal A. R. Crittenden, of the Ypsilanti High School, and to Miss Helen B. Muir, assistant in ancient languages in this institution, for assistance in reading the proof.

B. L. D'OOGÉ,

*Michigan State Normal School.*

NOVEMBER 20, 1896.

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	I
MODELS FOR WRITTEN LESSONS . . . . .	15
COMMON LATIN IDIOMS . . . . .	20
SELECTIONS FROM RITCHIE'S FABULAE FACILES . . . . .	25
I. PERSEUS . . . . .	25
II. HERCULES . . . . .	32
SELECTIONS FROM LHOMOND'S VIRI ROMAE . . . . .	64
I. MARCUS ATILIUS REGULUS . . . . .	64
II. PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS . . . . .	69
III. MARCUS PORCIUS CATO . . . . .	88
IV. AEMILIUS PAULUS MACEDONICUS . . . . .	97
SELECTIONS FROM GELLIUS' NOCTES ATTICAE . . . . .	106
NO.	
110. The reply of Fabricius to the Samnite ambassadors . . . . .	108
111. Why Socrates put up with his quarrelsome wife, and what Varro says about the duty of husbands . . . . .	109
112. The Sibylline books . . . . .	110
113. Who Papirius Praetextatus was, and why he was so called . . . . .	112
114. The epitaphs of Naevius, Plautus, and Pacuvius . . . . .	114
115. Socrates' endurance and temperance . . . . .	115
116. What divinity causes the earthquake . . . . .	117
117. Shaving among the Romans . . . . .	119
118. A famous letter written to King Pyrrhus by the Roman consuls . . . . .	120
119. Sudden death caused by excessive joy . . . . .	122
120. Why Fabricius favored Rufinus, an avaricious man, for the consulship . . . . .	123

NO.	PAGE
121. Alexander's horse, Bucephalus . . . . .	124
122. How Hannibal mocked Antiochus . . . . .	126
123. How the mute son of Croesus regained the power of speech . . . . .	127
124. A story about Polus, the actor . . . . .	129
125. The sanctity of an oath among the Romans . . . . .	130
126. Some famous ancient libraries . . . . .	132
127. A letter of King Philip to Aristotle . . . . .	133
128. The largest rivers of the ancient world . . . . .	134
129. Why the Greeks and Romans wear the ring on next to the smallest finger of the left hand . . . . .	135
130. A story about the Romans and the Carthaginians . . . . .	136
131. The response of Romulus about the use of wine . . . . .	137
132. A memorable reconciliation between two distinguished men . . . . .	137
133. A conversation between Pacuvius and Accius . . . . .	139
134. The strange death of Milo, the athlete . . . . .	140
135. A marvelous prediction of the battle of Pharsalia . . . . .	141
136. Mithradates and Ennius as linguists . . . . .	142
137. That it is worse to be coldly praised than to be too harshly criticised . . . . .	142
138. The number of Niobe's children . . . . .	143
PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY OF GREEK AND LATIN PROPER NAMES . . . . .	144

#### FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS.

PERSEUS AND THE HEAD OF MEDUSA . . . . .	25
HERCULES . . . . .	32
IUVENIS ROMANUS . . . . .	64
THE ACROPOLIS OF ATHENS . . . . .	106

# EASY LATIN FOR SIGHT READING.



## INTRODUCTION.

### I. What is Sight Reading?

By sight reading is meant the ability to read and understand Latin in the order in which it stands, without formal translation and without slavish dependence upon grammar and dictionary. If a translation be required, it should come as a subsequent exercise in English after the thought of the Latin is already clear. Sight reading does not mean inexact and rapid skimming over of a Latin text. In acquiring the power to read at sight, we proceed at first *slowly*, afterwards with greater speed, to an exact and accurate comprehension of the language.

### II. What are the Difficulties?

The difficulties are not so great as is usually supposed. Constant practice and persistent effort along right methods together with a thorough knowledge of the essentials of Latin grammar are all that is required. The three chief obstacles that hinder the student's progress through a Latin sentence are his deficient vocabulary, his unfamiliarity with the constructions, and the unusual order of the words and clauses.

### III. Consideration of the Difficulties :

#### A. VOCABULARY.

The vocabulary actually necessary for reading ordinary Latin is not discouragingly large. A certain amount is, however, indispensable. To build up a good vocabulary words should be memorized systematically. The following hints may be found helpful :

*a.* Learn as soon as possible the meanings of the prepositions, conjunctions, pronominal adverbs, and numerals. These recur very frequently and can neither be guessed nor omitted.

*b.* Learn the force of the principal prefixes and suffixes, and the most important rules for word formation (H. pp. 152-178; A. pp. 140-162). Master all that is essential, omitting exceptions and minor points.

*c.* Memorize new words as you meet them, beginning with the first or root meaning of words in their simplest forms, *e.g.*, learn **dūcō** before you try to remember **con-dūcō**. Knowing the root meaning and the force of prefix or suffix, you will be easily led, without using a dictionary, to the meanings of derivatives and compounds.

*d.* In inferring the meaning of a prepositional compound, try the root meaning before you try to add the force of the preposition. Many prepositional compounds fail to show the force of the preposition in translation, *e.g.*, **adiuvō** differs but little from **iuvō**, and **indigeō** from **egeō**. Often the particular force of a compound is made clear by the context.

*e.* English derivatives, if used in the proper way, may afford valuable aid in inferring meanings. A derivative

is, however, always open to suspicion, and should not be trusted in most cases beyond a mere suggestion. In the case of a new verb, the perfect participle will often suggest some English derivative that will give the help desired, *e.g.*, **subtractus** through English *subtract* may suggest the proper translation for **subtrahō**.

*f.* Have a try at every word before you consult the dictionary; but when you are compelled to do this, look up the word in question so thoroughly that you will not need to do so again. Students waste an incalculable amount of time in looking up the same word a score of times.

### B. SYNTAX.

Happily the days are past when students were made to swallow Latin grammar *in toto* before being allowed to use any of it in practice. The victims of formal culture so called have been many. The new teaching of Latin differs radically from the old in that it seeks to apply grammatical knowledge as fast as it is acquired and that it excludes all non-essentials. In the study of syntax practical utility is the aim of instruction. It should be learned as it is needed. Much that the grammar contains is never needed by students in secondary schools. Many greatly overestimate the amount of syntax that is indispensable to correct and facile interpretation, and in trying to learn too much fail to learn the little well. *The essential little must be as well known as the English alphabet.*

By practice, great facility can be acquired in recognizing and even anticipating constructions. Many of them

are preceded or accompanied by invariable signs that are soon learned, if attention be called to them. Alertness of mind and a little common sense, assisted by the context, often lead one to the correct interpretation without any special thought of the construction. To know the name of a construction is no help in itself to the correct interpretation. The more we read and the more easily we do so, the less we consider constructions as such, though, of course, we of necessity give the proper force to each case and mood in interpreting the thought. Construing is, therefore, not an end in itself, but should be merely the means to the end, namely, the interpretation of the Latin. When overdone and perfunctory, as it often is, it retards rather than assists a pupil's progress in reading Latin. Some special hints on construction are given later on under a separate heading.

### C. ORDER OF WORDS.

The difficulty that appears most formidable to beginners is the strangeness of the Latin order. Perfect familiarity with the Roman ways of constructing sentences is, however, an absolute essential to easy reading. The strangeness of the order is often more apparent than real. Examples of the periodic structure and of inverted order are not uncommon in English and are readily understood, *e. g.*, "Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you."

"Up from the meadows rich with corn,  
Clear in the cool September morn,"  
The clustered towers of Frederick stand."



One reason, and perhaps the principal one, why we find sentences such as these so difficult in Latin is that we try to get the Latin thought in fragments by reading and translating bits of the sentence at a time, instead of reading it all straight through and thus getting the complete thought in one effort of the mind as we do in English.

A peculiarity of Latin style that is often conspicuous, and one that is of great assistance in interpretation, is that the thoughts generally move by antitheses. These contrasts are carefully marked by the order of the words and by particles. By noticing these, you can anticipate the course of the thought.

The following brief summary of important points on order and style may be found helpful:

*a.* To read a language the words must be taken exactly as they come.

*b.* Read a sentence straight through before you try to translate any of it. As you read, carry along in thought the meanings of the words, whether vague or definite to your mind, and their probable office, so far as the progress of the sentence enables you to do so. Keep the mind expectant until the close of the sentence settles all doubtful points. Try to grasp the meaning of the sentence as a whole. If you do not succeed the first time, read it again and again until you think you get the thought.

*c.* Latin aims to keep the same subject throughout a complex sentence. When the subject is changed, that fact is usually made plain by inserting it or a pronoun referring to it.

*d.* The first word in a sentence is always conspicuous in interest and importance. Very often it is a noun, pronoun, or phrase referring to the preceding sentence or to some part of it :

*Id cum frūstrā saepe fēcisset*, etc. Here *id* refers to what has been described in the foregoing sentence.

*e.* The most important word or combination of words is often taken out from a subordinate introductory sentence and placed at the very beginning before the connective introducing that sentence. This order is especially common with **cum** clauses of time and cause. The word or phrase thus made emphatic is often such as has been described in *d* above :

*Latīnus dum ad Tiberim dēscendit, sacerdotēs bovem immolāvit.*

*In quem postquam omnium ōra conversa sunt, ad ūnum omnēs Scipiōnem in Hispāniā prōcōnsulem esse iussērunt.*

*Quae rēs cum iuveni Pompēiō cēnantī nūntiāta esset*, etc.

*f.* When a word serves as the common subject or object of both a principal and subordinate clause, it stands before them both. The same is true, if the same word is subject of the principal clause and object (direct or indirect) of the subordinate clause. Likewise if the subject of the subordinate clause is the object (direct or indirect) of the principal clause. (Cf. Menge's Repetitorium, 543.)

*Ancus, priusquam eis bellum indiceret, lēgātum misit*, *Ancus, before he declared war against them, sent an ambassador.*

*Masinissam* qui ēgregiē rem Rōmānam adiūverat aureā corōnā dōnāvit, *Masinissa*, who had conspicuously assisted the Roman expedition, he gave a golden crown.

g. Latin makes use of many words, commonly pronouns and pronominal adverbs, to point forward to a following explanatory sentence. We are thus led to anticipate and prepare ourselves for what is to come. Watch for these signs and make the most of them. They are very helpful.

*Forte ita* incidit ut eō ipsō tempore Hasdrubal ad eundem portum appelleret, *perchance it so happened that at that very time Hasdrubal landed at the same harbor.*

*Tam* longē aberam ut eum nōn vidērem, *I was so far away that I did not see him.*

Here *ita* and *tam* point forward to the following ut clauses.

h. A modifying clause or phrase is usually put before the thing modified, hence a clause of characteristic sometimes precedes the thing characterized :

*Unde agger comportāri posset*, nihil erat reliquum, *there was nothing left from which a mound could be constructed.*

i. Words strongly contrasted are often put next to each other. When the subject and object are thus placed, it is sometimes difficult to distinguish them until we come to the verb. With a verb taking two accusatives, the subject often stands between them :

*Mē Albānī* ducem creāvērunt, *the Albans elected me general.*

*j.* **Quidem** always marks an antithesis, expressed or understood. Do not always translate it by *indeed*, which often means nothing at all. It is often untranslatable, though its influence is always felt :

**Bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus civitātī prōfuit quam Rōmulus**, *he waged no war, to be sure, but he was of no less service to the state than Romulus.*

*k.* The antecedent of a relative pronoun often follows it, and often it is not expressed at all :

**Cum in insidiās vēnissent quī locus Furculae Caudinae vocābātur**, etc., *when they had come to the ambush, a place which was called the Caudine Forks.*

**Pompēius enim, quod antea contigerat nēminī, primum ex Africā, iterum ex Eurōpā, tertiō ex Asiā triumphāvit**, *for Pompey triumphed first over Africa, second over Europe, and third over Asia, (a thing) which had happened to no one before.*

**Misit** (sc. *eōs*) **quī sibi cōsulātum dēposcerent**, *he sent (men) to demand the consulship for himself.*

*l.* Adjectives that precede nouns are emphatic, unless they are numeral adjectives or adjectives expressing quantity.

*m.* An adverb modifies a verb, adjective, or other adverb, and regularly precedes the word it modifies.

*n.* **Cum** often stands between an adjective and noun.

#### IV. Notes on Individual Words and Constructions.

1. Latin expresses loosely by means of participles all sorts of relations that are expressed in English by subordinate clauses. The particular relation must be determined by the context.

2. Expect to find many more cases of apposition than in English. An appositive often takes the place of :

a. A temporal clause.

**Cicerō puer Arpinī vīxit**, *Cicero, when he was a boy, lived at Arpinum.*

b. A concessive clause.

**Labiēnō lēgātō militēs nōn pārent**, *the soldiers do not obey Labienus, although he is lieutenant.*

c. A relative clause.

**Externus timor, māximum concordiae vinculum, etc.**, *fear without, which is the strongest bond of union.*

3. Clauses capable of being used as the subject or the object of a verb are :

I. Infinitive Clauses, or Indicative Clauses with **quod** in statements of fact.

II. Indirect Questions.

III. Purpose Clauses.

IV. Result Clauses.

4. **Cum** is either a preposition or a conjunction. The following word will usually determine its character. If that be a noun in the ablative case, **cum** is a preposition.

Sometimes, however, a modifying genitive stands between **cum** and its object. If **cum** be a conjunction, it may be a mere connective, correlative with a following **tum**, or it may introduce a subordinate clause and mean *since*, *although*, or *when*. If it introduces a subordinate clause and means *since* or *although*, it is followed by the subjunctive. If it means *when*, the following mood will be indicative, in case the tense be present or future; if the tense be past, the mood will probably be subjunctive.

5. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, in the sense of *while* or *as long as*, take the indicative mood. In the sense of *until*, when expressing *purpose*, *doubt*, or *futurity*, they take the subjunctive.

6. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, when referring to an anticipated or intended act which may or may not occur, take the subjunctive. When they refer to the actual occurrence of an event as a point beyond or back of which the main event took place, they take the indicative :

**Priusquam dīmīcārent, mīlitēs hortātus est, he harangued the soldiers before they fought.**

**Haec nōn intellēxit antequam Genāvam pervēnit, he did not perceive this before he arrived at Geneva.**

7. **Quīn** has the following principal uses :

<b>Quīn.</b> {	{	I. Principal clauses, with the indicative.	{	<i>a.</i> Interrogative, <i>why not?</i>
			}	<i>b.</i> Corroborative, <i>indeed, nay, verily</i> , etc.
	{	II. Subordinate clauses, with the subjunctive.	{	Used after negative sentences to express result.

8. **Ut** has the following principal uses :

<b>Ut.</b> {	I. As conjunctive adverb, with the indicative.	{	1. Time, <i>when, as soon as.</i>
			2. Manner. {
II. As conjunction, with the subjunctive.	{	a. Concessive, <i>although.</i>	
		b. Purpose, <i>that, in order that, in order that not</i> (after verbs of fearing).	
		c. Result, <i>so that, that.</i>	

As a relative adverb **ut** is often followed by a noun in apposition, or by an adjective.

9. **Et** has three uses: (1) as connecting two words or expressions, *and*; (2) as the first of two **et**'s, *both . . . and*; (3) as bearing upon a single word, *also, too, even.*

10. **Adeō** in its commonest use means *to such a degree*, and is followed by an **ut** clause of result.

11. **Dubitō**, in the sense of *doubt*, and **dubium** preceded by a negative, are usually followed by **quā** and the subjunctive. In the sense of *hesitate* **dubitō** is regularly followed by the infinitive.

12. A pluperfect subjunctive is equal to a future perfect indicative from a past point of view.

13. Keep in mind :

a. That the gerund is a verbal noun, and may therefore stand either alone or with an object.

*b.* That the gerundive is a participle used adjectively, agreeing with a substantive in gender, number, and case.

*c.* That the gerundive with its substantive may be used for any gerund with a substantive.

*d.* That the gerund with a direct object is commonly used only in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. In other cases the gerundive is preferred.

14. Distinguish between **plūs**, **amplius**, **potius**, and **magis**.

**plūs** refers to quantity.

**amplius** refers to extent of time or space.

**potius** expresses preference, and excludes the second of two things compared.

**magis** expresses degree.

15. Predicate adjectives may be followed by the dative, by the objective genitive, or by the ablative of specification to complete their meaning:

**Hōc hostī optimum erat**, *this was best for the enemy.*

**Avidus laudis erat**, *he was eager for praise.*

**Claudus alterō pede est**, *he is lame in one foot.*

## 16. THE CASES.

### 1. *The Nominative.*

An introductory noun in the nominative case is the subject of a verb either main or subordinate.

### 2. *The Genitive.*

*a.* In general the genitive of a noun may be possessive, subjective, objective, partitive, or in apposition with some other genitive. If modified by an adjective, it may be descriptive genitive.



*b.* The genitive of a pronoun will be either subjective, objective, partitive, or belong to some noun as an adjective.

*c.* The genitive of an adjective expressing size or quantity may agree with a noun or may express the value of something.

*d.* The Latin genitive is used to express that to which the action of a noun or an adjective is done (objective), as well as that from which it springs (subjective).

*e.* Nouns expressing activity of the mind or heart are usually followed by :

(1) The objective genitive of a noun.

(2) The objective genitive of a gerund or of a gerundive agreeing with a noun.

### 3. *The Dative.*

*a.* The dative of any word may designate the person or thing indirectly concerned in an act or state expressed by a noun, adjective, verb, or a group of words.

*b.* The dative of the name of a person, or of a word referring to a person, may have the general sense of the dative case, or may designate the apparent agent or the possessor.

*c.* Words denoting persons deprived of a thing are often put in the dative, the Latin regarding the act as done *to* the persons.

*d.* If a form that may be either dative or ablative be the name of a person or refer to a person, it is more likely to be a dative than an ablative, since personal relations are denoted more frequently by the former than by the latter.

4. *The Accusative.*

*a.* The name of a town or **domus** or **rūs**, in the accusative without a preposition, probably designates the object to which motion is directed.

*b.* The name of a person, or a word referring to persons, in the accusative case without a preposition, must be either the object of a verb, the subject or predicate of an infinitive, or in apposition with one of these.

*c.* As accusatives of specification are found most commonly: the relative **quod**; the interrogative **quid**; **hōc** and **id** with **aetātis** or **temporis**; **partem**, **vicem**, and **genus** with **omne** or a pronoun.

*d.* Accusatives of time and space are naturally limited to such nouns as can convey such ideas, *e.g.*, **pedēs**, **mēnsēs**, etc.

*e.* Cognate accusatives are possible only for nouns that repeat in substantive form the meaning of a verb, *e.g.*, **vīta**, **somnium**, etc.; and for neuter pronouns and adjectives.

5. *The Ablative.*

*a.* The ablative case includes three ideas from which all its constructions flow, *viz.*: the starting point (the true ablative, *from*), the means (the instrumental, *by*), and the place (the locative, *in*).

*b.* Nearly all ablatives can be absolute, or can depend on a comparative or on a special word like **dignus** or **ūtor**. The meaning of the word is a great help in suggesting the correct construction.

c. The ablative without a preposition, referring to a person, must be ablative absolute, ablative dependent on a comparative or some special word like *dignus* or *ûtor* or ablative of source with some word like *genitus*, *ortus*, or *nātus*.

d. The ablative of a word referring to time naturally expresses the time when.

## MODELS FOR WRITTEN LESSONS.

### TO THE TEACHER.

The following exercises are intended to fix more firmly in mind the preceding principles of order and syntax. They should be used at convenient intervals and without previous announcement or preparation. The passage for translation should be written on the board, and each question should be answered as it occurs before the pupil goes farther. Do not write more of the sentence than precedes the respective questions until they are answered. Teachers may find it profitable to prepare additional exercises on the models here presented.

#### 1.

#### Virginēs Sabīnōrum rapiuntur.

Multi<sup>1</sup> convēnere<sup>2</sup> studiō<sup>3</sup> videndae<sup>4</sup> novae urbis, maxime Sabīnī cum<sup>5</sup> liberis et<sup>6</sup> coniugibus. Ubi spectāculi tempus vēnit eōque<sup>7</sup> conversae mentēs cum oculis erant, tum signo<sup>8</sup> datō<sup>9</sup> iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt<sup>10</sup>, virginēs rapiunt<sup>11</sup>.

1. What may be said of the first word in a sentence?
2. What tense? Give the other form.
3. What are the possible cases and constructions? What constructions may follow **studiō**? (See IV, 16, 2, *e.*)
4. Is this a gerund or a gerundive?
5. What are the possible uses and meanings of **cum**?
6. What are the uses of **et**?
7. **eōque = et in eum locum.**
8. Possible cases and constructions?
9. Construction? What relations may be expressed by participles?
10. What is the force of the prefix **dis-**?
11. Translate.

## II.

## Dē virtūte Rēgulī.

Primō bellō Pūnicō<sup>1</sup> Rēgulus, dux Rōmānus captus ā<sup>2</sup> Poenis, dē captivīs commūtandīs<sup>3</sup> Rōmam missus est. Is, cum Carthāgine<sup>4</sup> abiret, iūrāvit<sup>5</sup> sē eō<sup>6</sup> reditūrum nisi sui civēs condiōnēs fēcissent<sup>7</sup>. At ille in senātū captivōs<sup>8</sup> nōn esse commūtandōs dēclārāvit : deinde, cum propinquī<sup>9</sup> et amīcī retinēre cōnārentur, ex urbe dēcessit, quia ad supplicium redire maluit quam fidem hostī datam fallere<sup>10, 11</sup>.

1. What is the probable construction of this phrase?
2. What constructions follow **ā** or **ab**?
3. **commūtō**, cf. English *commute* = *exchange*.
4. Probable construction?
5. What kind of a clause may now be expected?
6. **eō** = **in eum locum.**
7. What is the force of this tense? (See IV, 12.)

8. What are the possible constructions? (See IV, 16, 4, *b.*)
9. **propinquī = cōgnātī, sanguine coniūctī.**
10. **fallere = violāre.**
11. Translate.

## III.

## - Crūdēlitāte virgō spōnsum suum āmittit.

Gallī, quī audāciam māximī<sup>1</sup> aestimābant<sup>2</sup>, ferārum certāminibus<sup>3</sup> multum dēlectābantur. Aliquandō rēx cum māgnā catervā<sup>4</sup> nōbilium mulierumque clārārum lūdōs<sup>5</sup> sollemnēs aspiciēbat. Quaedam ex his, quae spōnsī<sup>6</sup> fortitudinem temptāre voluit, aureum torquem<sup>7</sup> dēiēcit in<sup>8</sup> mediam harēnam, quā leō ingēns cum duōbus tigribus certāmen ācerrimum agēbat. "Tū quidem<sup>9</sup>," inquit, "sī quid in tē residet amōris ergā mē, torquem mihi<sup>10</sup> ē feris ēripe." Statim iuvenis hīs verbis accēnsus in harēnam sē praecipitāvit; saltū<sup>11</sup> alacrī torquem rapuit; tūtus cum praemiō rediit. Tum ille, dum<sup>12</sup> omnēs factum plaudunt, cum risū ad pedēs virginis crūdēlis torquem prōiēcit. "Tū quidem," inquit, "meam vītam minimī<sup>13</sup> habuisti; ego tuum amōrem<sup>14</sup>."<sup>15</sup>

1. What are the possible cases and constructions?
2. What does this word show as to the construction of **māximī**? (See IV, 16, 2, *c.*)
3. Possible constructions?
4. **catervā = multitūdine.**
5. Probable construction?
6. Translate *of her lover.*
7. Translate *necklace.*
8. What case will follow?

9. What is the force of this word? (See III, C, *j*.)
10. What kind of a dative may this be? (See IV, 16, 3, *b*.)
11. **saltū**, *with a leap*.
12. What are the meanings of this word, and what constructions may follow it?
13. Compare **māximī** above.
14. Sc. **minimī habeō**. **habeō** in this idiom equals **aestimō** in sense.
15. Translate the whole.

## IV.

**Hannibalis ducis astūtia.**

Hannibal, dux<sup>1</sup> classis Pūnicæ, ē nāvī quæ iam capiēbātur, in scapham<sup>2</sup> saltū sē dēmīttēns<sup>3</sup> Rōmānōrum manū effūgit. Veritus<sup>4</sup> autem nē in patriā classis<sup>5</sup> āmissæ poenās daret, cīvium odium astūtiā āvertit ; nam ex illā infēlicī pūgnā, priusquam<sup>6</sup> clādis nūntius domum<sup>7</sup> —<sup>8</sup>, quendam ex amicis Carthāginem mīsit. Quī postquam<sup>9</sup> cūriam intrāvit, “Cōnsulit,” inquit, “vōs<sup>10</sup> Hannibal, cum dux Rōmānōrum māgnīs cōpiīs maritimīs instrūctis advēnerit, num<sup>11</sup> cum eō cōnfligere dēbeat.” Acclāmāvit ūniversus senātus nōn esse dubium<sup>12</sup> quīn<sup>13</sup> cōnfligī oportēret<sup>14</sup>. Tum ille “Cōnflīxit,” inquit, “et superātus est.” Ita nōn potuērunt factum<sup>15</sup> damnāre quod ipsī fieri dēbuisse iūdicāverant.<sup>16</sup>

1. What force may the appositive have? (See IV, 2.)
2. Will the verb in this sentence be one denoting rest or motion?
3. What is the force of the prefix **dē-**?
4. What construction will follow?

5. What variety of genitive may this word be?
6. What moods follow this word?
7. What construction?
8. Supply a suitable verb in the proper mood and tense.
9. Account for the position of **quī**. (See III, C, *d*, and *f*.)
10. **cōnsulit vōs** = *asks your advice*.
11. **num** = *whether*. What construction will follow? Name the different kinds of substantive clauses. (See IV, 3.)
12. What construction will follow? (See IV, 11.)
13. Name the meanings and uses of **quīn**. (See IV, 7.)
14. **cōnfligī oportēret** = **pūgnandum esset**.
15. What part of speech?
16. Translate.

## V.

## Mors Servī Tullī, Rōmānōrum rēgis sextī.

Quā rē audītā<sup>1</sup> Servius<sup>2</sup> dum<sup>3</sup> ad<sup>4</sup> cūriam contendit, iūssū<sup>5</sup> Tarquinī per gradūs dēiectus<sup>6</sup> et domum<sup>7</sup> refugiēns interfectus est. Tullia<sup>8</sup> carpentō<sup>9</sup> vēcta in<sup>10</sup> Forum properāvit et coniugem<sup>11</sup> ē<sup>12</sup> cūriā ēvocātum<sup>13</sup> prima rēgem —<sup>14</sup>; cūius iūssū cum<sup>15</sup> ē turbā āc tumultū dēcessisset<sup>16</sup> domumque rediret, visō patris corpore<sup>17</sup> mūliōnem<sup>18</sup> cunctantem et frēna inhibentem super ipsum corpus<sup>19</sup> carpentum agere —<sup>20</sup>. Unde<sup>21</sup> vicus<sup>22</sup> ille scelerātus dictus est. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs<sup>23</sup> quattuor et quadrāgintā<sup>24</sup>.

1. Why is this phrase placed first? (See III, C, *d*.)
2. What is the construction of **Servius**?
3. Meanings and following constructions?
4. What are the meanings of **ad**, and what kind of a verb will the sentence contain?

5. Construction?
6. **per gradūs dēiectus** = *was thrown down the steps.*
7. Case and probable construction? (See IV, 16, 4, a.)
8. **Tullia filia rēgis erat.**
9. Translate *carriage*, abl. of means.
10. What cases follow **in**, and what are its most usual meanings?
11. Case and probable construction?
12. What case will follow?
13. What is the force of the prefix **ē-**?
14. What verb can you suggest to govern **rēgem** and **coniugem** and complete the sentence?
15. To whom does **cūius iūssū** refer, and why does it precede **cum**? (See III, C, e.)
16. Construction?
17. Construction?
18. Translate *the driver.*
19. Translate *right over the very body.*
20. Supply a suitable verb.
21. **unde** = **quā ex causā.**
22. **vicus** = **pars urbis.**
23. Probable construction?
24. Translate.

#### COMMON LATIN IDIOMS.

The following idioms occur so frequently that it will be of much subsequent advantage and a great saving of time for the student to memorize them thoroughly early in his course.

**ad ūnum**, *to a man.*

**aequō animō**, *contentedly, resignedly, patiently.*

**aere aliēnō premī**, *to be heavily in debt.*



agere grātiās, *to thank.*

alius aliam in partem, *one in one direction, another in another.*

amicō aliquō ūtī, *to be on terms of intimacy with some one.*

animō tenuis commovērī, *to be moved to the heart.*

annum quartum agēns, *in his fourth year.*

annōs quattuor nātus, *at the age of four.*

ante annōs, *before the legal age.*

apud rēgem, *at the court of the king.*

bellum inferre, *to make war upon.*

bene habet, *it is well.*

bonō animō esse, *to be well disposed.*

bonum animum habēre, *to be of good courage.*

capitis damnātus, *convicted of a capital crime, sentenced to death.*

causam dīcere or agere, *to state a case, to plead a case.*

certior fierī, *to be informed.*

certiōrem facere, *to inform.*

cōnsilia inire, *to make plans.*

cōnsulere alicui, *to look out for the interest of some one.*

cōnsulere aliquem, *to consult some one, to ask advice of some one.*

dare operam, *to see to, give attention to, take pains.*

diem dīcere or ēdīcere, *to appoint a time, name a day.*

dum haec geruntur, *while this was going on.*

eō magis, *all the more.*

extrēmā hieme, *at the end of winter.*

ex rē pūblicā, *to the best interests of the state.*

gerere magistrātum, *to hold an office.*

grātiās agere, *to thank.*

grātiam habēre, *to be grateful.*

grātiam or grātiās referre, *to return a favor.*

grātum facere, *to do a favor.*

īdem quī, *the same as.*

īdem sentīre, *to have the same opinion.*

in diēs, *every day, daily.*

in dubium vocārī, *to be called in question.*

in fugam dare, *to put to flight.*

in grātiā redīre, *to be reconciled.*

in mātīmōnium dūcere, *to marry.*

in perpetuum, *forever.*

inter cēnam, *at table.*

iūs dīcere, *to pronounce judgment.*

longum est, *it would take long, it would be tedious.*

mandāre litterīs, *to commit to writing.*

memoriā tenēre, *to remember.*

molestē ferre, *to take it ill, to be grieved.*

multum valēre, *to be very influential.*

nāvem cōnscendere, *to embark.*

novae rēs, *a revolution.*

novus homō, *an upstart, a parvenu, a self-made man.*

ōrātiōnem habēre, *to make a speech.*

operam dare, *to see to, to take pains.*

opus est, *it is necessary.*

placuit senātui, *the senate decided.*

plūrimum posse, *to be most powerful, to be most influential.*

prae sē ferēs, *showing, exhibiting.*

praeclārē sē habēre, *to be admirable.*

prō amicō habēre, *to regard as a friend.*

prō cōntiōne, *before the assembly, or in an address.*

quae cum ita sint, *since this is true, under these circumstances, this being the case.*

quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

rationem reddere, *to render an account, to give an explanation.*

rēs gestae, *exploits, deeds.*

salūtem dīcere, *to salute, to greet.*

satis cōnstat, *it is well established.*

sē cōnferre, *betake oneself, go.*

sē gerere, *conduct oneself, act.*

sententia stat, *it is resolved, they resolve.*

stipendium merēre, *to perform military service.*

terga vertere, *to retreat.*

ūnus atque alter, *one or two.*

veniam dare, *to pardon.*

ventum est, *he or she came, he or she has come, they came, they have come.*

vereor nē, *I fear that.*

vereor ut, *I fear that not.*

vītam agere, *to live.*

## ABBREVIATIONS.

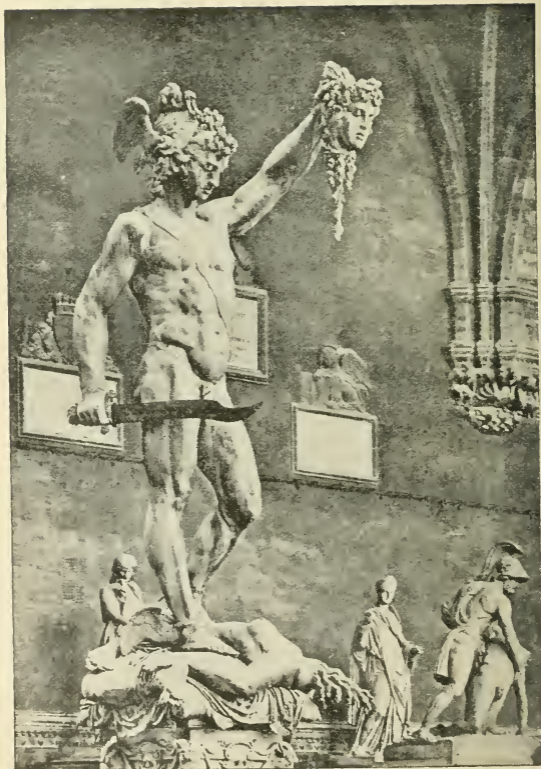
---

acc., accusative.	ind. disc., indirect discourse.
act., active.	lit., literally.
abl., ablative.	n., number or note.
adj., adjective.	nom., nominative.
adv., adverb.	obj., object.
ant., antonym, a word of opposite meaning.	or., simplified order.
cf., <i>confer</i> , compare.	par., paraphrase.
dat., dative.	pred., predicate.
e.g., <i>exempli gratia</i> , for instance.	sc., <i>scilicet</i> , supply.
Eng., English.	subj., subjunctive, or subject.
gen., genitive.	syn., synonym.
i.e., <i>id est</i> , that is.	v., <i>vide</i> , see.
	voc., vocative.

N. B. A superior figure placed after a word refers to that word alone.

A superior figure placed before a word refers to two or more of the following words.





PERSEUS AND THE HEAD OF MEDUSA.

## FABULAE FACILES.

### I.

#### PERSEUS.

*Acrisius, an ancient king of Argos, had been warned by an oracle that he would perish by the hand of his grandson. On discovering, therefore, that his daughter Danae had given birth to a son, Acrisius endeavored to escape his fate by casting both mother and child adrift on the sea. They were saved, however, by the help of Jupiter; and Perseus, the child, grew up at the court of Polydectes, king of Seriphos, an island in the Aegean Sea. On reaching manhood, Perseus was sent by Polydectes to fetch the head of Medusa, one of the Gorgons. This dangerous task he accomplished with the help of Apollo and Minerva, and on his way home he rescued Andromeda (daughter of Cepheus) from a sea monster. Perseus then married Andromeda, and lived some time in the country of Cepheus. At length, however, he returned to Seriphos, and turned Polydectes to stone by showing him the Gorgon's head; he then went to the court of Acrisius, who fled in terror at the news of his grandson's return. The oracle was duly fulfilled, for Acrisius was accidentally killed by a quoit thrown by Perseus.*

#### 1. Perseus infāns cum māt̄re in ārcā inclūsus est.

Haec narrantur ā poētis dē Perseō. Perseus filius erat Iovis, mākimi deōrum : avus ēius Ācrisius appellātus est. Ācrisius volēbat Perseum nepōtem suum necāre<sup>1</sup> ; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit<sup>2</sup> igitur 5 Perseum, adhūc infantem, et cum māt̄re <sup>3</sup>in ārcā lignēā inclūsit. Tum ārcam ipsam in mare cōniēcit. Danaē,

1. occīdere, interficere.

2. cēpit, corripuit.

3. in a wooden box.

Perseī māter, māgnopere<sup>1</sup> territa est : tempestās enim māgna mare turbābat. Perseus autem in sinū<sup>2</sup> mātris dormiēbat<sup>3</sup>.

1. *valdē, vehementer.*2. *gremiō.*3. *somnum capiēbat.*

2. **Ārcā ad īnsulam Serīphum appulsā, Perseus māterque**  
5 **ā rēge benignē exceptī sunt.**

Iūppiter tamen haec omnia vidit et filium suum servāre cōstituit. Fēcit igitur mare tranquillum, et ārcam ad īnsulam Serīphum perdūxit. Hūius īnsulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam ārcā ad litus<sup>1</sup> appulsa est,  
10 Danaē<sup>2</sup> in harēnā quiētem capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā piscātōre<sup>3</sup> quōdam reperta est<sup>4</sup>, et ad domum rēgis Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum benignē excēpit, et sēdem<sup>5</sup> tūtā in finibus suis dedit. At Danaē hōc dōnum libenter accēpit, et prō tantō beneficiō rēgi  
15 <sup>6</sup>grātiās ēgit.

1. *litus est terra adiacēns marī.*2. *Par. in litore dormiēbat.*3. *fisherman.*4. *inventa est, dēprehēnsa est.*5. *domum.*6. *See idioms.*

3. **Rēx dīmīsīt Perseum.**

Perseus igitur<sup>1</sup> multōs annōs ibi habitābat, et cum mātre suā<sup>2</sup> vitam agēbat beātā<sup>3</sup>. At Polydectēs Danaēn māgnopere amābat, atque eam<sup>4</sup> in mātrimōnium dūcere volē  
20 bat. Hōc tamen cōsilium Perseō minimē grātum<sup>5</sup> erat

1. *itaque.*2. *See idioms.*3. *fēlicem, laetam.*4. *See idioms.*5. *acceptum, iūcundum, placitum.*



Polydectēs igitur Perseum dimittere cōstituit. Tum iuvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec<sup>1</sup> dixit: "Turpe<sup>2</sup> est vitam hanc ignāvam<sup>3</sup> agere; iamdūdum tū adulēscēns es. Quousque<sup>5</sup> hic manēbis? Tempus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre<sup>6</sup>. Hinc abi et caput Medūsae mihi 5 refer."

1. *as follows.*

4. *You have already for some*

2. *Ant. honestum, pulchrum, decōrum.*

*time been a man.*

5. *ad quod tempus.*

3. *remissam, lentam. Ant. strēnuam, fortem.*

6. *ostendere, exhibēre, probāre.*

#### 4. Perseus profectus tandem Medūsam invēnit.

Perseus, ubi haec audivit, ex insulā discessit, et postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesivit. Diū frūstrā quaerēbat; namque nātūram loci ignōrābat. Tan- 10 dem Apollō et Minerva viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Primum ad Grāiās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab his <sup>1</sup>tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva <sup>2</sup>falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum postquam tālāria pedibus induit<sup>3</sup>, in āera<sup>4</sup> ascendit. Diū per āera volābat: 15 tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēteris<sup>5</sup> Gorgonibus habitābat. Gorgones autem mōnstra erant speciē<sup>6</sup> horribili: capita enim eārum squāmīs<sup>7</sup> omnīnō contēcta<sup>8</sup> sunt: manūs etiam ex aere<sup>9</sup> factae sunt.

1. *sandals and a magic helmet.*

5. *reliquīs, aliīs.*

2. *a curved dagger and a mirror.*

6. *aspectū.*

3. *indūxit, sūmpsit.*

7. *scales.*

4. *acc. case of āēr, cf. Eng. air.*

8. *tēcta, operta, vestīta.*

9. *abl. of aes = brass.*

## 5. Caput Gorgonis.

Rēs erat difficillima abscidere caput Gorgonis ; ēius enim cōspectū hominēs in saxum<sup>1</sup> vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva speculum eī dederat. Perseus igitur tergum<sup>2</sup> vertit, et in speculum inspiciēbat : hōc modō ad locum vēnit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput ēius ūnō ictū abscidit. Cēterae Gorgones statim ē somnō excitātae sunt, et, ubi rem vidērunt, irā commōtae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum occidere<sup>3</sup> volēbant ; ille autem, dum fugit, galeam magicam induit, et, ubi hōc fēcit, statim ē cōspectū eārum ēvāsit<sup>4</sup>.

1. *lapidem.*3. *interficere.*2. *Ant. faciem, voltum.*4. *exiit, aufūgit, evolāvit.*

## 6. Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit.

Post haec Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit : ibi Cēpheus quidam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hīc Neptūnum, maris deum, ōlim<sup>1</sup> offenderat : Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum<sup>2</sup> miserat. Hōc cottidiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Ob hanc causam pavor<sup>3</sup> animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum dei Ammōnis cōsultuit atque ā deō iūssus est filiam mōnstrō trādere. (Ēius autem filia, nōmine Andromēda, virgō fōrmōssissima<sup>4</sup> erat.) Cēpheus, ubi haec audīvit, māgnū dolōrem<sup>5</sup> percēpit. Volēbat tamen civēs suōs ē tantō periculō extrahere ; atque ob eam causam cōstituit imperāta<sup>6</sup> Ammōnis facere.

1. *aliquandō, quondam.*4. *pulcherrima.*2. *crūdēlissimum, immānissimum.*5. *maerōrem, lūctum.*3. *timor.*6. *iūssa.*

## 7. Mōnstrum et Andromeda.

Tum rēx <sup>1</sup>diem certam dixit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad litus dēducta est et in cōspectū omnium ad rūpem adligāta<sup>2</sup> (est). Omnēs fātum eius dēplōrābant nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum exspectant, Perseus accurrit; et, ubi lacrimās vidit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illi rem tōtam expōnunt<sup>3</sup> et puellam dēmōnstrant. <sup>4</sup>Dum haec geruntur, fremitus<sup>5</sup> terribilis audītur; simul mōnstrum horribili speciē procul cōspicitur<sup>6</sup>. Eius cōspectus timōrem māximum <sup>10</sup> omnibus iniēcit<sup>7</sup>. At mōnstrum māgnā celeritātē ad litus contendit<sup>8</sup>, iamque ad locum appropinquābat<sup>9</sup> ubi puella stābat.

1. See idioms.

6. videtur.

2. *vincta, cōstricta.*7. *immisit.*3. *nārrant.*8. *mātūrāvit, properāvit.*

4. See idioms.

9. *accēdēbat.*5. *strepitus, sonitus.*

## 8. Servat Andromedam Perseus.

At Perseus, ubi haec vidit, gladium<sup>1</sup> suum rapuit<sup>2</sup>; et, <sup>15</sup> postquam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est<sup>3</sup>. Tum dēsuper<sup>4</sup> in mōnstrum impetum subitō<sup>5</sup> fēcit, et gladiō suō collum eius graviter volnerāvit. Mōnstrum, ubi sēnsit volnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit<sup>6</sup> et sine morā tōtum corpus sub aquam immersit. Perseus, dum circum litus <sup>20</sup> volat, reditum eius exspectābat; mare autem intereā<sup>7</sup>

1. *ferrum, ēnsem.*4. *ē locō superiōre.*2. *cēpit.*5. *repente, celeriter.*3. From *tollō*; *sē ērēxit, surrēxit.*6. *ēmisit.*7. *interim.*

undique<sup>1</sup> sanguine inficitur<sup>2</sup>. Post breve tempus, bēlua<sup>3</sup> rŭrsus<sup>4</sup> caput sustulit<sup>5</sup>; mox<sup>6</sup> tamen ā Perseō ictū gravi-ōre volnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub <sup>7</sup>undās mersit neque posteā vīsa est.

1. *ex omnī parte.*2. *tingitur, imbuitur.*3. *mōnstrum.*4. *iterum.*5. From *tollō*, syn. *ērēxit*.6. *post breve tempus, sine morā.*7. *aquās.*

5      9. **Rēx Perseō Andromedam in mātrimōnium dedit.**

Perseus, postquam in lītus dēscendit, primum tālāria exuit<sup>1</sup>; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vincta<sup>2</sup> erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat<sup>3</sup>, et, ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta<sup>4</sup> est. Ille vincula  
10 statim<sup>5</sup> solvit, et puellam patri reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem māximō gaudiō affectus est: meritās <sup>6</sup>grātiās prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in mātrimōnium dedit. Ille libenter<sup>7</sup> hōc dōnum accēpit, et puellam uxōrem dūxit. Paucōs annōs  
15 cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitābat, et in māgnō honōre erat apud omnēs Aethiopes. Māgnopere tamen cupiēbat<sup>8</sup> mātrem suam rŭrsus vidēre. Tandem<sup>9</sup> igitur cum uxōre ē rēgnō Cēpheī discessit<sup>10</sup>.

1. *Ant. induit.*2. *adligāta, cōnstricta.*3. *abiēcera, dīmīserat.*4. *mortua.*5. *cōnfēstim, sine morā.*

6. See idioms.

7. *alacriter.*8. *volēbat.*9. *dēnique, ad extrēmum.*10. *abiit, profectus est.*

## 10. Polydectēs in saxum versus est.

Postquam Perseus ad insulam nāvem appulit, <sup>1</sup>sē ad locum contulit ubi māter ōlim<sup>2</sup> habitāverat; at domum pervēnit vacuum et omninō<sup>3</sup> dēsertam. Trēs diēs per totam insulam mātrem quaerēbat; tandem<sup>4</sup> quartō diē <sup>5</sup> ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat<sup>5</sup>. Perseus, ubi haec cōgnōvit<sup>6</sup>, irā magnā commōtus est; ad rēgiam Polydectis sine morā contendit, et, ubi eō<sup>7</sup> vēnit, statim in ātrium inrūpit<sup>8</sup>. Polydectēs magnō timōre<sup>9</sup> affectus est et fugere volēbat. <sup>10</sup> Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Medūsae mōnstrāvit<sup>10</sup>; ille autem, <sup>11</sup>simul atque hōc vidit, in saxum versus est.

1. See idioms.

2. cf. p. 28, l. 15.

3. *plānē, funditus.*4. *dēmum, dēnique.*5. *metuēbat.*6. *intellēxit, audīvit.*7. *in eum locum.*8. *invāsit, inruit.*9. *pavōre.*10. *ostendit.*11. *ubi primum.*11. Perseus ad urbem Ācrisī rediit, et occīdit avum suum ut fātis dēcrētum erat. 15

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre<sup>1</sup> suā ad urbem Ācrisī rediit<sup>2</sup>. Ille autem, ubi Perseum vidit, magnō terrōre affectus est; nam propter ōrāculum istud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārissam statim refūgit: frūstrā tamen; nōn enim fātum suum <sup>20</sup> vitāvit<sup>3</sup>. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārissae lūdōs magnōs fecit; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmiserat, et <sup>4</sup>diem ēdixe-

1. *coniuge.*2. *revertit.*3. *effūgit.*

4. See idioms.

rat. Multi ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnērunt: ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen<sup>1</sup> discōrum<sup>2</sup> iniit. At, dum discum conicit, avum suum cāsū occidit; Ācrius enim inter spectātōrēs ēius certāminis forte stābat.

1. contentiōnem.

2. of the discus or quoits.

---

II.

HERCULES.

*Hercules, a Greek hero celebrated for his great strength, was pursued throughout his life by the hatred of Juno. While yet an infant, he strangled some serpents sent by the goddess to destroy him. During his boyhood and youth he performed various marvelous feats of strength; and, on reaching manhood, succeeded in delivering the Thebans from the oppression of the Minyae. In a fit of madness, sent upon him by Juno, he slew his own children, and, on consulting the Delphic oracle as to how he should cleanse himself from this crime, he was ordered to submit himself for twelve years to Eurystheus, king of Tiryns, and to perform whatever tasks were appointed him. Hercules obeyed the oracle, and during the twelve years of his servitude accomplished twelve extraordinary feats known as the Labors of Hercules. His death was caused, unintentionally, by his wife Deianira. Hercules had shot with his poisoned arrows a Centaur named Nessus, who had insulted Deianira. Nessus, before he died, gave some of his blood to Deianira, and told her it would act as a charm to secure her husband's love. Some time after, Deianira, wishing to try the charm, soaked one of her husband's garments in the blood, not knowing that it was poisoned. Hercules put on the robe, and, after suffering terrible torments, died, or was carried off by his father Jupiter.*

5

12. Herculēs infāns.

Herculēs, Alcmēnae filius, ōlim in Graeciā habitābat. Hic dicitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. At Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum, Alcmēnam ōderat<sup>1</sup> et Herculem

1. Ant. amābat.



HERCULES.





adhūc infantem necāre<sup>1</sup> voluit. Misit igitur duo serpentēs saevissimōs : hī, mediā nocte, in cubiculum<sup>2</sup> Alcēmāe vērunt ubi Herculēs cum frātre suō dormiēbat. Nōn tamen in cūnis<sup>3</sup>, sed in scūtō<sup>4</sup> māgnō cubābant<sup>5</sup>. Serpentēs iam appropinquāverant<sup>6</sup> et scūtum movēbant ; 5 itaque pueri ē somnō excitāti sunt.

1. cf. p. 25, l. 4.

3. *cradle.*5. *iacēbant.*2. *room.*4. *shield.*6. *accesserant.*

### 13. Herculēs et serpentēs.

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, māgnā vōce exclāmāvit ; at Herculēs ipse, puer fortissimus<sup>1</sup>, haudquāquam<sup>2</sup> territus est. Parvis manibus serpentēs statimprehendit<sup>3</sup>, et colla 10 eōrum māgnā vi compressit. Tālī modō serpentēs ā puerō interfecti<sup>4</sup> sunt. Alcēmā autem, māter puerōrum, clāmōrem audiverat, et maritum<sup>5</sup> suum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit, et gladium suum rapuit<sup>6</sup>; tum ad puerōs properābat<sup>7</sup>, sed, ubi ad locum vēnit, rem miram 15 vidit: Herculēs enim rīdēbat et serpentēs mortuōs mōnstrābat<sup>8</sup>.

1. Ant. *ignāvissimus.*5. *coniugem, virum.*2. *minimē omnium, omninō nōn.*6. *prehendit, cēpit.*3. *cēpit, rapuit.*7. *mātūrābat, contendēbat.*4. *necātī.*8. *ostendēbat, exhibuit.*

### 14. Herculēs mūsicam discit.

Herculēs ā puerō corpus suum diligenter exercēbat : māgnam partem diēi in palaestrā<sup>1</sup> cōnsūmēbat : didicit<sup>2</sup> 20

1. *gymnasium.*2. Perfect of *discō.*

etiam arcum intendere et tēla conicere<sup>1</sup>. His exercitā-  
 tiōnibus virēs<sup>2</sup> eius cōfirmātae sunt. In mūsicā etiam  
 ā Linō Centaurō ērudiebātur<sup>3</sup>: (Centaurī autem equi  
 erant, sed caput hominis habēbant); huic tamen artī  
 5 minus diligenter studēbat. Hic Linus Herculem ōlim  
 culpābat<sup>4</sup>, quod parum<sup>5</sup> studiōsus erat; tum puer irātus  
 citharam<sup>6</sup> subitō rapuit, et sum̄mis viribus caput magistri  
 infēlicis<sup>7</sup> percussit<sup>8</sup>. Ille ictū prōstrātus est, et <sup>9</sup>paulō  
 post <sup>10</sup>ē vitā excessit, neque quisquam posteā id officium  
 10 suscipere voluit.

1. *iacere, impellere.*2. *powers.*3. *docēbātur, infōrmābātur.*4. *vituperābat.*5. *Ant. nimis.*6. *lyram.*7. *miseri.*8. *valdē verberāvit.*9. *soon after.*10. *mortuus est.*

### 15. Herculēs vincula et mortem effugit.

Dē Hercule haec etiam inter alia narrantur. Ōlim,  
 dum iter facit, in finēs Aegyptiōrum vēnit; ibi rēx quī-  
 dam, nōmine Būsiris, illō tempore rēgnābat; hic autem,  
 15 vir crūdēlissimus, hominēs <sup>1</sup>immolāre cōsuēverat: Her-  
 culem igitur corripuit et in vincula coniēcit. Tum nūn-  
 tiōs dimisit et <sup>2</sup>diem sacrificiō ēdixit. Mox ea diēs appe-  
 titiv<sup>3</sup> et omnia rite<sup>4</sup> parāta sunt. Manūs Herculis catēnis<sup>5</sup>  
 ferreis vinctae<sup>6</sup> sunt et <sup>7</sup>mola salsa in caput eius inspersa  
 20 est. (Mōs enim erat apud antiquōs salem et fār<sup>8</sup> capiti-

1. *sacrificāre solēbat.*2. *See idioms.*3. *adfuit.*4. *bene, rēctē, ex mōre.*5. *vinculis.*6. *adligātae.*7. *salted meal.*8. *molam.*

bus victimārum impōnere.) Iam victima ad aram<sup>1</sup> stābat ; iam sacerdōs cultrum sūmpserat<sup>2</sup>. Subitō tamen Herculēs māgnō cōnātū vincula perrūpit<sup>3</sup> : tum ictū sacerdotem prōstrāvit ; alterō<sup>4</sup> rēgem ipsum occidit.

1. *altāria.*3. cf. Eng. *rupture.*2. *cēperat, prehenderat.*4. abl. of means, sc. *ictū.*

## 16. Herculēs lēgātis Minyārum iniūriam facit.

5

Herculēs, iam adulēscēns, urbem Thēbās incolēbat. Rēx Thēbārum, vir ignāvus<sup>1</sup>, Creōn appellātus est. Minyae, gēns bellicōsissima, Thēbānis finitimi<sup>2</sup> erant. Lēgātī autem ā Minyīs ad Thēbānōs quotannis mittēbantur : hī Thēbās veniēbant et centum bovēs postulā- 10 bant<sup>3</sup>. Thēbānī enim ōlim ā Minyīs superātī erant ; tribūta igitur rēgī Minyārum quotannis pendēbant<sup>4</sup>. At Herculēs civēs suōs hōc stipendiō liberāre cōstituit : lēgātōs igitur comprehendit atque aurēs eōrum abscidit<sup>5</sup>. Lēgātī autem apud omnēs gentēs sacri habentur<sup>6</sup>. 15

1. Ant. *fortis.*4. *solvēbant, remittēbant.*2. *proximī, vicinī.*5. *amputāvit, resecurit.*3. *poscēbant, flāgitābant.*6. *iūdicantur, exīstimantur.*

## 17. Bellum in Minyās.

Erginus, rēx Minyārum, ob haec vehementer irātus est, et cum omnibus cōpiis in finēs Thēbānōrum contendit<sup>1</sup>. Creōn adventum ēius per explorātōrēs cōgnōvit : ipse tamen pūgnāre nōluit, nam māgnō timōre affectus est. Thēbānī igitur Herculem imperātōrem<sup>2</sup> creāvērunt. Ille nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisit et cōpiās coēgit<sup>3</sup> ; tum

1. *mātūrāvit, properāvit.*2. *ducem.*3. *conūgit*

proximō diē cum māgnō exercitū profectus est. Locum idōneum<sup>1</sup> dēlēgit et aciem instrūxit; tum Thēbānī ē superiōre locō impetum in hostēs fēcērunt. Illi autem impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt; itaque aciēs hostium  
5 pulsa<sup>2</sup> est atque in fugam conversa.

1. *aptum, commodum.*

2. cf. Eng. *repulse.*

### 18. Herculēs dēmēns liberōs suōs occīdit.

Post hōc proelium Herculēs cōpiās suās ad urbem redūxit. Omnēs Thēbānī propter victōriam māximē gaudēbant<sup>1</sup>. Creōn autem māgnīs honōribus Herculem  
10 decorāvit, atque filiam suam eī in mātrimōnium dedit. Herculēs cum uxōre suā<sup>2</sup> vitam beātam agēbat; sed post paucōs annōs subitō<sup>3</sup> in furōrem incidit atque liberōs suōs ipse suā manū occīdit. Post breve tempus ad sānitātem  
15 reductus est et propter hōc facinus<sup>4</sup> māgnō dolōre affectus est; mox ex urbe effūgit et in silvās sē recēpit. Nōlēbant enim cīvēs sermōnem cum eō habēre.

1. *laetābantur.*

3. *repente.*

2. See idioms.

4. *flāgitium, scelus.*

### 19. Herculēs ad ōrāculum Delphicum it.

Herculēs māgnopere<sup>1</sup> cupiēbat tantum scelus expiāre. Cōstituit igitur ad ōrāculum Delphicum ire; hōc enim  
20 ōrāculum erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis, plūrimīs dōnīs ōrnātum; hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, nōmine Pŷthia, et cōsiliū dabat eīs qui ad ōrāculum veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō

1. *valdē, vehementer.*

Apolline docēbātur<sup>1</sup>, et voluntātem deī hominibus ēnūtiābat<sup>2</sup>. Herculēs igitur, qui Apollinem praecipuē colēbat<sup>3</sup>, hūc vēnit. Tum rem tōtam exposuit neque scelus cēlavit<sup>4</sup>.

1. *ēradiēbātur, īstituēbātur.*

2. *nūntiābat, dīcēbat.*

3. *venerābātur.*

4. *reticuit, tēxit.*

## 20. Respōnsum ōrāculī.

5

Ubi Herculēs finem fēcit, Pŷthia diū conticēbat<sup>1</sup>; tandem<sup>2</sup> tamen iussit eum ad urbem Tīrynthā<sup>3</sup> ire, et Eurystheī rēgis omnia imperāta<sup>4</sup> facere. Herculēs, ubi haec audivit, ad urbem illam contendit et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādīdit. Duodecim annōs in servitūte Eury- 10  
stheī tenēbātur et duodecim labōrēs quōs ille imperāverat, cōnfēcit; hōc enim ūnō<sup>5</sup> modō tantum scelus expiārī potuit. Dē hīs labōribus plūrima ā poētis scripta sunt. Multa tamen, quae poētae nārrant, vix crēdibilia sunt.

1. *nihil dīcēbat.*

2. *Par. post longam moram,*

*dēnique, ad extrēmum.*

3. Tīryns, a city in Argolis.

4. *iūssa.*

5. *alone.*

## 21. Labor p̄rimus: Herculēs Nemaēum leōnem occīdit. 15

Primum ab Eurystheō iūssus est Herculēs leōnem occidere, qui illō tempore vallem Nemaeam<sup>1</sup> reddēbat infestam. In silvās igitur quās leō incolēbat, statim sē contulit<sup>2</sup>. Mox feram<sup>3</sup> vidit et arcum quem sēcum attulerat<sup>4</sup>, intendit<sup>5</sup>: ēius tamen pellem<sup>6</sup> quae dēnsissima erat, trāi- 20

1. *Par. faciēbat plēnam perīculī.*

2. *From cōnferō. See idioms.*

3. *animal saevum.*

4. *gesserat.*

5. *cf. Eng. tension.*

6. *cf. Eng. pelt, peltry.*

cere<sup>1</sup> nōn potuit. Tum clāvā<sup>2</sup> māgnā quam semper gerēbat, leōnem percussit<sup>3</sup>: frūstrā tamen, neque enim hōc modō eum occidere potuit. Tum dēmum<sup>4</sup> collum mōnstri brachiīs<sup>5</sup> suis complexus est, et faucēs<sup>6</sup> ēius summīs  
 5 vīribus compressit. Hōc modō leō brevī tempore exanimātus est; nūlla enim respīrandi facultās eī dabātur. Tum Herculēs cadāver ad oppidum in umeris rettulit; et pellem, quam dētrāxerat, posteā prō veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem quī eam regiōnem incolēbant ubi fāmam  
 10 dē morte leōnis accēpērunt<sup>7</sup>, vehementer gaudēbant<sup>8</sup> et Herculem māgnō honōre habēbant.

1. *trānsfigere.*2. *club.*

3. cf. p. 34, l. 8.

4. *tandem.*5. *arms.*6. *jaws.*7. *audīvērunt.*

8. cf. p. 36, l. 9.

## 22. Labor secundus: Herculēs Hydram<sup>1</sup> Lernaean occīdit.

Post haec iūssus est ab Eurystheō Hydram necāre: haec autem mōnstrum erat cui novem erant capita. Herculēs igitur cum amicō Iolāō profectus est ad palūdem  
 15 Lernaean quam Hydra incolēbat. Mox<sup>2</sup> mōnstrum invenit, et, quamquam rēs erat māgni periculī, collum ēius laevā<sup>3</sup>prehendit. Tum dextrā<sup>3</sup>capita novem abscidere<sup>4</sup> coepit; quotiēns<sup>5</sup> tamen hōc fēcerat, nova capita exoriēbantur<sup>6</sup>. Diū frūstrā labōrābat, tandem hōc cōnātū dēstitit<sup>7</sup>; cōstituit deinde arborēs succidere et ignem accendere. Hōc celeriter fēcit, et, postquam ligna ignem  
 20

1. The Hydra was a huge serpent having nine heads.

2. cf. p. 30, l. 2.

3. sc. *manū.*

4. cf. p. 35, l. 14.

5. *as often as.*6. *nāscēbantur.*7. *abstinuit.*

comprehendērunt, <sup>1</sup>face ārdente colla adūssit unde<sup>2</sup> capita exoriēbantur. Nōn tamen sine māgnō labōre haec fēcit; vēnit enim auxiliō Hydrae cancer<sup>3</sup> ingēns, quī, dum Herculēs capita abscidit, crūra ēius mordēbat<sup>4</sup>. Postquam mōnstrum tālī modō interfēcit, sagittās suās sanguine 5 ēius imbuīt<sup>5</sup> itaque mortiferās reddidit<sup>6</sup>.

1. *with a blazing brand he scorched the necks.*  
2. *ex quibus.*  
3. *crab.*

4. *volnerābat, laedēbat.*  
5. *tinxit, madefēcit.*  
6. *effēcit.*

### 23. Labor tertius: Herculēs cervum<sup>1</sup> incrēdibilī celeritāte capit.

Postquam Eurystheō caedēs Hydrae nūntiāta est, māgnus timor animum ēius occupāvit. Iussit igitur Herculem 10 cervum quendam ad sē referre, nōluit enim virum tantae audāciae in urbe retinēre. Hīc autem cervus (cūius cornua aurea fuisse trāduntur<sup>2</sup>) incrēdibili fuit celeritāte. Herculēs igitur primum vestigia<sup>3</sup> ēius in silvis animadvertit; deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vīdit, summīs viribus 15 currere coepit. Ūsque ad vesperum currēbat neque nocturnum tempus<sup>4</sup> sibi ad quiētem relinquēbat. Frūstrā tamen, nūllō enim modō <sup>5</sup>praedam cōsequī poterat. Tandem, postquam tōtum annum cucurrerat<sup>6</sup> (ita trāditur<sup>7</sup>) cervum cursū exanimātum<sup>8</sup> cēpit et vīvum ad Eury- 20 stheum rettulit.

1. *stag.*  
2. *dīcuntur.*  
3. *tracks.*  
4. *obj. of relinquēbat.*

5. *Par. ad cervum pervenīre.*  
6. *Pluperf. of currō.*  
7. *nārrātur.*  
8. *dēfessum, cōnfectum.*

24. Labor quartus: Herculēs et aper<sup>1</sup> Erymanthius.

Post haec iussus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere qui illō tempore agrōs Erymanthiōs vāstābat, et incolās<sup>2</sup> hūius regiōnis māgnopere terrēbat. Herculēs rem suscepit et in Arcadiam profectus est. Postquam in silvam paulum prōgressus est, aprō occurrit<sup>3</sup>; ille autem, <sup>4</sup>simul atque Herculem vidit, statim refūgit, et, timōre perterritus, in altam fossam sē prōiēcit. Herculēs igitur laqueum<sup>5</sup> quem attulerat, iniēcit; et summā cum difficultāte  
 10 aprum ē fossā extrāxit. Ille, etsi multum reluctābatur<sup>6</sup>, nūllō modō sē liberare potuit; et <sup>7</sup>ab Hercule ad Eurystheum vivus relātus est.

1. *wild boar.*2. *cf. incolēbat, p. 37, l. 18.*3. *obviat lit.*4. *ubi primum.*5. *noose.*6. *cf. Eng. reluctant.*7. *cf. the last sentence of the previous passage, of which this is the passive form.*

## 25. Herculēs ad regiōnem Centaurōrum pervenit.

Dē quartō labōre, quem suprā nārrāvimus, haec etiam  
 15 trāduntur<sup>1</sup>. Herculēs, dum iter in Arcadiam facit, ad eam regiōnem vēnit quam Centauri incolēbant. Mox, quod nox iam appetēbat<sup>2</sup>, ad antrum<sup>3</sup> dēvertit in quō Centaurus quidam, nōmine Pholus, habitābat.

Ille Herculem benigne excepit et cēnam<sup>4</sup> parāvit. At  
 20 Herculēs, postquam cēnāvit<sup>5</sup>, vinum ā Pholo postulāvit. Erat autem in antrō māgna amphora<sup>6</sup> vinō optimō replēta<sup>7</sup>,

1. *cf. p. 39, l. 19.*2. *appropinquabat.*3. *cave.*4. *cibum.*7. *plena.*5. *cenam sumpsit.*6. *wine jar.*



quam Centauri ibi deposuerant. Pholus igitur hoc vinum dare nolēbat, quod reliquōs Centaurōs timēbat: nūllum tamen vinum praeter hōc in antrō habēbat. "Hōc vinum," inquit, "mihi commissum est<sup>2</sup>. Sī igitur hōc dabō, Centauri mē interficient." Herculēs tamen eum 5 inrisit<sup>3</sup> et ipse cyathum<sup>4</sup> vini ex amphorā hausit.

1. *metuēbat.*2. *mandātum est.*3. *dērisit.* cf. Eng. *deriae, ridicula.*4. *pōcium.*

## 26. Proelium cum Centauris

<sup>1</sup>Simul atque amphora <sup>2</sup>aperta est, odor iucundissimus undique diffusus est; vinum etiā suāvissimū<sup>3</sup> erat. Centauri nōtum<sup>4</sup> odōrem sēserunt et omnēs ad locum <sup>10</sup>convēnērunt.

Ubi ad antrum pervenērunt, māgnopere irāti sunt quod Herculem bibentem<sup>5</sup> viderunt. Tum arma rapuērunt et Pholum interficere volēbant. Herculēs tamen in aditu<sup>6</sup> antri cōstitit et impetum eōrum fortissimē sustinēbat. <sup>15</sup>Facēs ardentēs in eōs coniecit, multos etiā sagittis suis volnerāvit. Hae autem sagittae caedem erant quae sanguine Hydrae <sup>6</sup>olim imbūtae erant. Omnes igitur quōs ille sagittis volnerāverat, verēnt<sup>7</sup> statim <sup>20</sup>alsumpti sunt: reliqui autem, ubi hōc viderunt, <sup>25</sup>terga verterunt et fugā salutem petiērunt.

1. cf. p. 40, l. 6.

2. Ant. *clausa est.*3. *dulcissimum.*4. Ant. *ignōtum.*5. cf. Eng. *imbibe.*6. *olim, / mane.*

7. cf. p. 36, l. 1.

8. Lat. *percutit, occidit, caedit.*9. cf. Eng. *assumpti.*10. *statim, cum, hic, statim, post.*

## 27. Mors Pholī.

Postquam reliquī fūgērunt, Pholus ex antrō ēgressus<sup>1</sup> est et corpora spectābat eōrum quī sagittis interfecti erant. Māgnopere autem mirātus est quod tam levi<sup>2</sup> volnere exanimati erant<sup>3</sup>, et causam ēius rei quaerēbat. Adiiit igitur locum ubi cadāver cūiusdam Centauri iacēbat, et sagittam ē volnere trāxit. Haec tamen, sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum, ē manibus ēius lapsa est et pedem leviter volnerāvit. Ille extemplō<sup>4</sup> dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit et post breve tempus vī venēni exanimātus est. Mox Herculēs, qui reliquōs Centaurōs secūtus erat, ad antrum rediit et māgnō cum dolōre Pholum mortuum vidit. Multis cum lacrimis corpus amici ad sepultūram dedit; tum, postquam alterum cyathum<sup>5</sup> vīni hausit, <sup>6</sup>somnō sē dedit.

1. cf. Eng. *egress*.2. *parvō*.3. *occisī erant*.4. *statim*.

5. cf. p. 41, l. 6.

6. *quiēvit, dormīvit*.28. Labor quīntus: Herculēs stabulum Augēae<sup>1</sup> pūrgat.

Deinde Eurystheus Herculi labōrem hunc graviōrem imposuit. Augēas quīdam, quī illō tempore rēgnum in Ēlide obtinēbat, tria mīlia boum habēbat. Hī in stabulō ingentis<sup>2</sup> māgnitudinis inclūdēbantur; stabulum autem inluviē<sup>3</sup> āc squālōre obsitum<sup>4</sup> erat, neque enim ad hōc tempus unquam pūrgātum erat. Hōc iūssus est Herculēs intrā spatium unius diēi pūrgāre. Ille, etsi rēs erat

1. Augeas, king of Elis. His stables had not been cleaned for thirty years.

2. *māximae*.3. *filth*.4. *squālidum*.

multae operae, negōtium suscēpit. Primum māgnō labōre fossam duodēviginti pedum fēcit, per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrū stabulī perdūxit. Tum, postquam mūrū perrūpīt<sup>1</sup>, aquam in stabulum immisit et tālī modō, contrā opiniōnem omnium, opus cōnfēcit<sup>2</sup>. 5

1. *perfrēgit.*

2. *perfecit.*

### 29. Labor sextus: avēs Stymphālī.

Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālū iter fēcit, imperāverat enim eī Eurystheus ut avēs Stymphālīdēs necāret. Hae avēs <sup>1</sup>rōstra aēnea habēbant et carne<sup>2</sup> hominum vēscēbantur<sup>3</sup>. Ille, postquam ad locum 10 pervēnit, lacum vīdit; in hōc autem lacū, quī nōn procul erat ex oppidō, avēs habitābant. <sup>4</sup>Nūlla tamen dabātur appropinquandī facultās, lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē limō<sup>5</sup> cōstitit; Herculēs igitur neque pedibus neque lintre<sup>6</sup> prōgredi potuit. 15

Ille, cum māgnam partem diēi frūstrā cōsūpsisset, hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad Volcānum<sup>7</sup> sē contulit, ut auxiliū ex eō peteret. Volcānus (quī ab fabrīs<sup>8</sup> māximē colēbātur), crepundia<sup>9</sup> quae ipse ex aere<sup>10</sup> fabricātus erat, Herculī dedit. His<sup>11</sup> Herculēs tam dirum crepītum<sup>12</sup> 20 fēcit ut avēs perterritae āvolārent; ille autem, dum āvolant, māgnū numerum eōrum sagittīs trānsfixit.

1. *beaks of brass.*

6. *cymbā, nācī.*

2. From *carō*, cf. Eng. *carnal*.

7. Vulcan, the god of fire and metal-working.

The abl. is governed by *vēscēbantur*.

8. *artificibus.*

3. *edēbant.*

9. *a rattle.*

4. Par. *nōn tamen appropinquāre poterat.*

10. cf. p. 27, l. 18.

11. Refers to *crepundia*.

5. *mud.*

12. *sonitum, strepītum.*

## 30. Labor septimus: Herculēs taurum ex Crētā refert.

Tum imperāvit Herculi Eurystheus ut taurum quendam ferōcissimum<sup>1</sup> ex insulā Crētā vivum referret. Ille igitur nāvem cōnscendit et, cum ventus idōneus<sup>3</sup> esset, statim solvit<sup>4</sup>. Cum tamen insulae iam appropinquāret, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nāvis cursum tenēre nōn posset. Tantus autem timor animōs nautārum occupāvit ut paene omnem spem salutis dēpōnerent<sup>5</sup>. Herculēs, tamen, etsi nāvīgandī imperitus<sup>6</sup> erat, haudquāquam<sup>7</sup> ter-  
 10 ritus est.

Post breve tempus summa tranquillitās cōnsecūta est, et nautae, quī sē ex timōre iam recēperant, nāvem incolumem<sup>8</sup> ad terram perdūxērunt. Herculēs ē nāvī ēgressus est et, cum ad rēgem Crētae vēnisset, causam veni-  
 15 endī docuit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, ad eam regiōnem contendit quam taurus vāstābat. Mox taurum vidit et, quamquam rēs erat māgnī periculī, cornua ēius prehendit<sup>9</sup>. Tum, cum ingentī labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxisset, cum praedā in Graeciam rediit.

1. *saevisissimum.*

2. See idioms.

3. *aptus, commodus, secundus.*4. Lit. *he loosed*, referring to casting off the ropes before sailing.5. *dīmitterent, abicerent.*6. *īgnārus.*7. *nēquāquam, minimē omnium, nōn omnīnō.*8. *salvam, integram.*9. *manibus cēpit.*

## 20 31. Labor octāvus: Herculēs et equī Diomēdis.

Postquam ex insulā Crētā rediit, Herculēs ab Eurytheō in Thrāciam missus est ut equōs Diomēdis redūce-

ret. Hī equī <sup>1</sup>carne hominum vēscēbantur ; Diomēdēs autem, vir crūdēlissimus, eīs prōiciēbat peregrinōs<sup>2</sup> omnēs quī in eam regiōnem vēnerant. Herculēs igitur māgnā celeritāte in Thrāciam contendit et ab Diomēde postulāvit ut equī sibi trāderentur. Cum tamen ille hōc 5 facere nōllet, Herculēs, irā commōtus, rēgem interfēcit et cadāver eīus equis prōici iussit.

Ita mira rērum commūtatiō facta est : is enim quī anteā multōs cum cruciātū<sup>3</sup> necāverat, ipse eōdem suppliciō necātus est. Cum haec nūntiāta essent, omnēs 10 quī eam regiōnem incolēbant<sup>4</sup>, māximā laetitiā affecti sunt et Herculi meritam <sup>5</sup>grātiā referēbant. Nōn modo māximis honōribus et praemiis eum decorāvērunt, sed orābant<sup>6</sup> etiam ut rēgnum ipse susciperet<sup>7</sup>. Ille tamen hōc facere nōlēbat, et, cum ad mare rediisset, nāvem occu- 15 pāvit<sup>8</sup>. Ubi omnia ad nāvigandum parāta sunt, equōs in nāvem collocāvit<sup>9</sup>; deinde, <sup>10</sup>cum idōneam tempestātem nactus esset, sine morā ē portū solvit, et <sup>11</sup>paulō post equōs in litus<sup>12</sup> Argolicum exposuit.

1. cf. 29, n. 2.

8. cōnscendit.

2. Ant. cīvēs.

9. posuit.

3. tormentō, summō dolōre.

10. Par. cum ventus idōneus esset, cf. p. 44, l. 4.

4. cf. p. 37, l. 18.

11. post breve tempus.

5. See idioms.

6. rogābant.

12. cf. 2, n. 1.

7. occupāret.

**32. Labor nōnus: Herculēs iubētur balteum<sup>1</sup> Hippolytēs, 20  
Amāzonum rēgīnae, obtinēre.**

Gēns Amāzonum dicitur omninō ex mulieribus cōstitisse<sup>2</sup>. Hae summam scientiam rei militāris habēbant

1. cf. Eng. belt.

2. fuisse.

et tantam virtutem praebēbant<sup>1</sup> ut cum viris proelium committere audērent<sup>2</sup>. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, balteum habuit celeberrimum quem Mārs eī dederat. Admēta autem, Eurystheī filia, fāmam dē hōc balteō  
 5 accēperat et eum possidēre vehementer cupiēbat. Eury-  
 stheus igitur Herculi mandāvit<sup>3</sup> ut <sup>4</sup>cōpiās cōgeret et bel-  
 lum Amāzonibus inferret. Ille nūntiōs in omnēs partēs  
 dimisit et, cum māgna multītūdō convēnisset, eōs dēlēgit<sup>5</sup>  
 quī māximum ūsum in rē militārī habēbant.

1. *exhibēbant.*3. *imperāvit.*2. Not *audērent.* cf. *audāx,*  
*audācia.*4. Par. *militēs cōligeret.*5. cf. Eng. *delegate.*

10                    33. Hippolytē balteum dare nōn volt.

Hīs viris Herculēs persuāsit, postquam causam itineris exposuit, ut sēcum iter facerent. Tum cum eīs quibus persuāserat <sup>1</sup>nāvem cōscendit, et, cum ventus idōneus esset, post paucōs diēs ad ōstium flūminis Thermōdontis  
 15 appulit<sup>2</sup>. Postquam in finēs Amāzonum vēnit, nūntium  
 ad Hippolytam misit quī causam veniendī doceret et bal-  
 teum pōsceret. Ipsa Hippolytē balteum trādere<sup>3</sup> volēbat,  
 quod<sup>4</sup> dē Herculis virtūte fāmam accēperat; reliquae<sup>5</sup>  
 tamen Amāzōnes eī<sup>6</sup> persuāsērunt ut negāret. At Her-  
 20 culēs, cum haec nūntiāta essent, bellī fortūnam temptāre  
 cōstituit.

Proximō igitur diē, cum cōpiās ēdūxisset, locum idō-  
 neum dēlēgit et hostēs ad pūgnam ēvocāvit. Amāzōnes

1. cf. p. 44, l. 4.

4. *quia, quoniam.*2. *appropinquāvit.*5. *cēterae.*3. *dare.*

6. i.e. Hippolyte.

quoque cōpiās suās ex castrīs ēdūxērunt et <sup>1</sup>nōn māgnō intervāllō aciem instrūxērunt.

1. *prope, nōn procul.*

### 34. Proelium cum Amāzonibus.

Palūs<sup>1</sup> erat nōn māgna inter duo exercitūs ; neutri tamen initium trānseundi facere volēbant. Tandem Herculēs sīgnum dedit et, ubi palūdem trānsiit, proelium commisit. 5

Amāzōnes impetum virōrum fortissimē sustinuērunt et contrā opīniōnem omnium tantam virtūtem praestitērunt<sup>2</sup> ut multōs eōrum occiderint, multōs etiam in fugam cōiēcērunt<sup>3</sup>. Virī enim novō genere pūgnae perturbābantur, nec solitam<sup>4</sup> virtūtem praestābant. Herculēs autem, cum haec vidēret, dē suis fortūnis dēspērāre coepit. Militēs igitur vehementer cohortātus est ut prīstinae<sup>5</sup> virtūtis memoriā retinērent, neu<sup>6</sup> <sup>7</sup>tantum dēdecus admitterent, <sup>10</sup> hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent ; quibus verbis animōs omnium ita ērēxit<sup>8</sup> ut multī, etiam quī volneribus cōnfecti<sup>9</sup> essent, proelium sine morā redintegrārent<sup>10</sup>.

1. *aqua stāgnāns.*

2. *exhibuērunt, ostendērunt.*

3. *dederint.*

4. *adsuētam.*

5. *cf. Eng. pristīne.*

6. *neu = et nō.*

7. *Par. tantam infāmiam ferrent.*

8. *excitāvit.*

9. *dēbilitātī, infirmī.*

10. *renovārent.*

### 35. Amāzōnes vincuntur.

Diū et ācritēr pūgnātum est<sup>1</sup> ; tandem tamen ad sōlis 20

1. *pūgnō* in the passive voice is always impersonal. Do not translate it literally : here, *they fought*.

occāsum tanta commūtātiō<sup>1</sup> rērum facta est ut mulierēs<sup>2</sup> terga verterent et fugā salūtem peterent. Multae autem volneribus dēfessae<sup>3</sup>, dum fugiunt, captae sunt ; in quō numerō ipsa erat Hippolytē. Herculēs summam clēmentiam<sup>4</sup> praestitit<sup>5</sup> et, postquam balteum accēpit, libertātem omnibus captivīs dedit. Post haec sociōs ad mare redūxit et, quod nōn<sup>6</sup> multum aestātis supererat, in Graeciam proficiscī mātūrāvit<sup>7</sup>. Nāvem igitur cōnscendit et, <sup>8</sup>tempestātem idōneam nactus, statim solvit<sup>9</sup>: antequam  
 10 tamen in Graeciam pervēnit, ad urbem Trōiam <sup>10</sup>nāvem appellere cōstituit ; frūmentum enim, quod sēcum habēbat, iam dēficere<sup>11</sup> coeperat.

1. cf. Eng. *commutation*.7. *contendit, festināvit.*

2. See idioms.

8. Par. *cum ventus idōneus*3. *cōnfectae, dēfatīgātae, lassae.**esset. nactus is from nancīscor*4. *hūmānitātem, benignitātem.**= forte invenio.*

5. cf. p. 47, l. 9.

9. cf. 30, n. 4.

6. *multum aestātis = much of*10. *nāvigāre.**the summer.*11. cf. Eng. *deficient, deficit.*

### 36. Lāomedōn, rēx Trōiae, et mōnstrum.

Lāomedōn quidam illō tempore rēgnum Trōiae obtinē-  
 15 bat ; ad hunc Neptūnus et Apollō annō superiōre vēnerant et, cum Trōia nōndum moenia habēret, ad hōc opus auxilium obtulerant<sup>1</sup>. Postquam tamen hōrum auxiliō moenia cōnfecta sunt, nōlēbat Lāomedōn praemium quod prōposuerat, persolvere<sup>2</sup>.

20 Neptūnus igitur et Apollō, ob hanc causam irātī<sup>3</sup>, mōnstrum quoddam mīserunt speciē<sup>4</sup> horribilī, quod cottidiē ē

1. From *offerō*.3. cf. Eng. *irate, ire.*2. *dare, pendere.*

4. cf. p. 27, l. 18.



marī veniēbat et hominēs pecudēsque vorābat<sup>1</sup>. Trōiāni igitur, timōre perterriti, in urbe continēbantur et pecora<sup>2</sup> omnia ex agris intrā mūrōs compulerant. Lāomedōn, hīs rēbus commōtus, ōrāculum cōsultuit; deus autem eī praecēpit<sup>3</sup> ut filiam Hēsionem mōnstrō obiceret<sup>4</sup>. 5

1. cf. Eng. *devour*.2. *animalia, bēstiās*.3. *monuit, imperāvit*.4. *trāderet*.

### 37. Hēsionē, filia rēgis, ab Hercule servātur.

Lāomedōn, cum hōc respōnsum renūntiātum esset, māgnū dolōrem percēpit<sup>1</sup>; sed tamen, ut civēs suōs tantō periculō liberāret, ōrāculō pārēre cōstituit et <sup>2</sup>diem sacrificiō dixit. Sed, sive cāsū<sup>3</sup> sive cōsiliō deōrum, 10 Herculēs tempore opportūnissimō Trōiam attigit<sup>4</sup>; ipsō enim temporis pūctō<sup>5</sup> quō puella catēnis vincta ad litus<sup>6</sup> dēdūcēbātur, ille <sup>7</sup>nāvem appulit. Herculēs, ē nāvi ēgressus, dē rēbus quae gerēbantur <sup>8</sup>certior factus est: tum, irā commōtus, ad rēgem sē contulit et auxilium suum 15 obtulit<sup>9</sup>. Cum rēx libenter eī concessisset<sup>10</sup> ut, si posset, puellam liberāret, Herculēs mōnstrum interfēcit et puellam, quae jam <sup>11</sup>omnem spem salutis dēposuerat, incolumem<sup>12</sup> ad patrem redūxit. Lāomedōn māgnō cum gaudiō filiam suam accēpit, et Herculī prō tantō beneficiō 20 meritās <sup>13</sup>grātiās rettulit.

1. *sēnsit*, cf. p. 28, l. 22.

2. See idioms.

3. *by chance*.4. *pervēnit*.5. *mōmentō*.

6. cf. 2, n. 1.

7. Par. *in portum nāvīgāvit*.

8. See idioms.

9. cf. p. 48, l. 17.

10. *permīssisset*.

11. cf. p. 30, l. 8.

12. *salvam*.

13. See idioms.

## 38. Labor decimus: bovēs Gēryonis.

Post haec missus est Herculēs ad insulam Erythiam ut bovēs Gēryonis arcesseret<sup>1</sup>. Rēs erat summae difficultātis, quod bovēs ā gigante Eurytiōne et ā cane bicipite<sup>2</sup> custō-  
 5 diēbantur. Ipse autem Gēryōn speciem horribilem prae-  
 bēbat<sup>3</sup>; habēbat enim tria corpora inter sē coniūcta. Herculēs tamen, etsi intellegēbat quantum periculum esset, negōtium<sup>4</sup> suscepit; et postquam per multās terrās iter fēcit, ad eam partem Libyae pervēnit quae Eurōpae  
 10 proxima est. Ibi in utrāque parte freti<sup>5</sup> quod Eurōpam ā Libyā dividit, columnās cōstituit<sup>6</sup>, quae postea Herculis Columnae appellatae sunt.

1. *abdūceret.*2. Etymology *bi-*, *twice* or *double*; *caput*, *head*.3. *exhibēbat.*4. *rem.*5. *strait.*6. *posuit.*

## 39. Herculēs Gēryonem interficit et obtinet bovēs.

Dum hīc<sup>1</sup> morātur, Herculēs māgnūm incommodum<sup>2</sup>  
 15 ex calōre<sup>3</sup> sōlis accipiēbat: tandem igitur, irā commōtus, arcum suum intendit<sup>4</sup> et sōlem sagittis petiit<sup>5</sup>. Sōl tamen audāciam virī tantum admirātus est ut lintrem<sup>6</sup> auream ei dederit. Herculēs hōc dōnum libentissimē<sup>7</sup> accēpit; nūllam enim nāvem in hīs regiōnibus invenire  
 20 potuerat. Tum lintrem dēdūxit<sup>8</sup> et, ventum nactus<sup>9</sup> idōneum, post breve tempus ad insulam pervēnit. Ubi ex

1. *in hōc locō.*2. *molestiam.*3. *ardōre.*

4. cf. p. 37, l. 20.

5. *aimed at.*6. *nāvem, cymbam.*7. Ant. *invitissimē.*8. *launched.*

9. cf. 35, n. 8.

incolis cōgnōvit quō in locō bovēs essent, in eam partem statim profectus est et ā rēge Gēryone postulāvit<sup>1</sup> ut bovēs sibi trāderentur. Cum tamen ille hōc facere nōllet, Herculēs et rēgem ipsum et gigantem Eurytiōnem interfēcit.

1. *flāgitāvit, popōscit.*

5

#### 40. Proelium in Ligurēs et imber<sup>1</sup> lapidum.

Tum Herculēs bovēs per Hispāniam et Liguriam compellere<sup>2</sup> cōstituit : postquam igitur omnia parāta sunt, bovēs ex insulā ad continentem trānsportāvit. Ligurēs tamen, gēns bellicōsissima, dum ille per finēs eōrum iter 10 facit, māgnis cōpiīs convēnērunt atque eum longius prōgredi prohibēbant. Herculēs māgnam difficultātem habēbat; barbarī enim in locīs superiōribus cōstiterant et saxa tēlaque in eum coniciēbant. Ille quidem paene<sup>3</sup> omnem spem salutis dēposuerat; sed tempore opportūnis- 15 simō Iuppiter imbrem lapidum ingentium<sup>4</sup> ē caelō dēmisit. Hī tantā vī cecidērunt ut māgnum numerum Ligurum occiderint; ipse tamen Herculēs<sup>5</sup> nihil incommodi cēpit.

1. *shower.*

2. *agere.*

3. cf. p. 30, l. 8.

4. Stronger than *māgnōrum.*

5. Par. *nulla vulnera.*

#### 41. Trānsitus Alpium.

Postquam Ligurēs hōc modō superātī sunt<sup>1</sup>, Herculēs 20 quam celerrimē prōgressus est et post paucōs diēs ad Alpēs pervēnit. Necessē erat hōs trānsire ut in Italiā bovēs dūceret; rēs tamen summae erat difficultātis: hī enim montēs quī Galliam ūlteriōrem<sup>2</sup> ab Italiā dividunt,

1. *vīctī sunt.*

2. Ant. *citeriōrem.*

nive<sup>1</sup> perenni<sup>2</sup> teguntur ; quam ob causam neque frūmentum neque pābulum<sup>3</sup> in his regiōnibus inveniri potest. Herculēs igitur, antequam ascendere coepit, māgnam cōpiam frūmenti et pābuli comparāvit et bovēs onerāvit<sup>4</sup>.

5 Postquam in his rēbus trēs diēs cōsūmpserat, quartō diē profectus est et, contrā omnium opiniōnem, bovēs incolumēs<sup>5</sup> in Ītaliā trādūxit.

1. *snow.*

2. Etymology *per, through-*  
*out ; annus, the year.*

3. *pābulum est cibus bēstiārum.*

4. cf. Eng. *onerous.*

5. cf. p. 49, l. 18.

#### 42. Cācus, gigās quīdam, bovēs aufert.

Post breve tempus ad flūmen Tiberim vēnit, illō tamen  
10 tempore nūlla erat urbs in eō locō ; Rōma enim nōndum condita est. Herculēs, itinere fessus, cōstituit ibi paucos diēs morārī ut sē ex labōribus recreāret. Haud procul ex valle ubi bovēs pāscēbantur, antrum<sup>1</sup> erat in quō gigās quīdam, nōmine Cācus, tum habitābat. Hīc  
15 speciem terribilem praebebāt, nōn modo quod ingenti māgnitūdine corporis erat, sed quod ignem ex ore expirābat. Cācus autem dē adventū Herculis<sup>2</sup> fāmam accēperat : noctū<sup>3</sup> igitur vēnit, et, dum Herculēs dormit, quattuor pulcherrimōrum boum abripuit. Hōs caudis<sup>4</sup> in antrum  
20 trāxit, nē Herculēs vestigiis<sup>5</sup> animadvertere posset quō in locō cēlāti essent.

1. cf. p. 40, l. 17.

2. Par. *rūmōrem audīverat.*

3. *nocturnō tempore.*

4. *by their tails.*

5. abl. of means.

43. Herculēs bovēs āmissōs undique<sup>1</sup> quaerit.

Posterō diē, <sup>2</sup>simul atque ē somnō excitātus est, Herculēs fūrtum<sup>3</sup> animadvertit et bovēs āmissōs undique quaerēbat. Hōs tamen nusquam reperire poterat; nōn modo quod loci nātūram ignōrābat, sed quod vestigiis falsis 5 dēceptus est. Tandem, cum māgnam partem diēi frūstrā cōsūmpsisset, cum reliquīs bōbus prōgredi cōstituit. At, dum proficisci parat, ūnus ē bōbus quōs sēcum habuit, mūgīre<sup>4</sup> coepit. Extemplō<sup>5</sup> ei qui in antrō inclūsī erant, mūgītum reddidērunt, et hōc modō Herculem <sup>6</sup>certiōrem 10 fēcērunt <sup>7</sup>quō in locō cēlāti essent. Ille, vehementer irātus, ad spēluncam<sup>8</sup> quam celerrimē <sup>9</sup>sē contulit ut praedam reciperet. At Cācus saxum ingēns ita dēīcerat ut aditus spēluncae omnīnō obstruerētur.

1. cf. p. 30, l. 1.

2. cf. p. 31, l. 12.

3. *theft.* cf. *furtive*.4. *to low*.5. *statim*.

6. See idioms.

7. cf. p. 52, l. 20.

8. *antrum*.

9. See idioms.

## 44. Bōbus repertīs, Cācus necātur. 15

Herculēs, cum nūllum alium introitum<sup>1</sup> reperire<sup>2</sup> posset, hōc saxum āmovēre cōnātus est; sed propter ēius māgnitudinem rēs erat difficillima. Diū frūstrā labōrābat neque quidquam efficere poterat: tandem tamen māgnō cōnātū saxum āmōvit et spēluncam<sup>3</sup> patefēcit<sup>4</sup>. Ibi āmissōs bovēs 20 māgnō cum gaudiō cōspēxit<sup>5</sup>; sed Cācum ipsum vix

1. *aditum*.2. *invenire*.

3. cf. 43, n. 8.

4. *aperuit*.5. *vīdit*.

cernere<sup>1</sup> potuit, quod spēlunca replēta erat fūmō<sup>2</sup> quem ille mōre suō ēvomēbat. Herculēs, <sup>3</sup>inūsitatā speciē turbātus, breve tempus haesitābat ; mox tamen in spēluncam inrūpit<sup>4</sup> et collum<sup>5</sup> mōnstrī bracchiis<sup>6</sup> complexus est<sup>7</sup>.  
 5 Ille, etsi <sup>8</sup>multum reluctātus est, nullō modō sē liberāre<sup>9</sup> potuit ; et, cum nūlla facultās respirandī darētur, mox, quod necesse fuit, exanimātus est<sup>10</sup>.

1. *vidēre, cōspicere.*

2. *smoke. cf. Eng. fumes.*

3. Par. *inūsitatō aspectū com-*  
*mōtus.*

4. *inruit, invāsit.*

5. cf. p. 39, l. 1.

6. *arms.*

7. *comprehendit.*

8. Par. *vehementer repūgnā-*  
*vit, summā vī restitit.*

9. *ēripere.*

10. *animā prīvātus est, necātus*  
*est.*

#### 45. Labor ūndecimus : aurea pōma<sup>1</sup> Hesperidum.

Eurystheus, postquam bovēs Gēryonis accēpit, labōrem  
 10 ūndecimum Herculi imposuit, graviōrem quam quōs<sup>2</sup> suprā  
 nārrāvimus. Mandāvit<sup>3</sup> enim eī ut aurea pōma ex hortō  
 Hesperidum auferret. Hesperides autem nympheae erant  
 quaedam fōrmā praestantissimā<sup>4</sup>, quae in terrā longinquā<sup>5</sup>  
 habitābant, et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Iūnōne com-  
 15 missa erant. Multi hominēs, aurī cupiditatē inductī, haec  
 pōma auferre iam antea cōnātī erant: rēs tamen difficil-  
 lima erat ; namque hortus in quō pōma erant, mūrō ingenti  
 undique circumdatus est ; praetereā dracō<sup>6</sup> quīdam, cui<sup>7</sup>  
 centum erant capita, portam hortī diligenter custōdiēbat.

1. *apples.*

2. The antecedent of *quōs* is  
*labōrēs* understood.

3. *imperāvit.*

4. *pulcherrimā.*

5. *remōtā.*

6. *serpēns.*

7. The dative of possessor.

Opus<sup>1</sup> igitur quod Eurystheus Herculi imperāverat, erat summae difficultātis, nōn modo ob causās quās memorāvimus<sup>2</sup>, sed quod Herculēs omninō ignōrābat quō in locō hortus ille situs<sup>3</sup> esset.

1. labor.

2. nārrāvimus.

3. positus.

#### 46. Herculēs Atlantem vīsit.

5

Herculēs, quamquam quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, cōstituit tamen <sup>1</sup>Eurystheō pārēre; et <sup>2</sup>simul ac iūssa eius accēpit, proficisci mātūravit<sup>3</sup>. Ā multis mercātōribus<sup>4</sup> quaesiverat quō in locō Hesperides habitārent; nihil tamen certum reperire potuerat. Frūstrā per multās 10 terrās iter fēcit et multa pericula subiit: tandem, cum in his itineribus tōtum annum cōsūmpsisset, ad extrēmam partem orbis quae proxima erat Oceanō, pervēnit. Hic stābat vir quīdam, nōmine Atlās, ingenti māgnitūdine corporis, quī caelum (ita trādunt<sup>5</sup>) umeris suis sustinēbat 15 nē in terram dēcideret<sup>6</sup>. Herculēs tantum labōrem māgnopere mirātus, <sup>7</sup>post paulō in colloquium cum Atlante vēnit, et, cum causam itineris docuisset, auxilium eius petiit.

1. Par. iūssa Eurystheī facere.

4. merchants.

2. simul atque, ubi primum.

5. nārrant, dīcunt.

3. contendit, fēstīnāvit.

6. Not dēcideret.

7. mox, post breve tempus.

#### 47. Herculēs, Atlante absente, caelum sustinet.

20

Atlās autem potuit Herculi māximē prōdesse<sup>1</sup>; ille enim, cum ipse esset pater Hesperidum, bene scīvit quō

1. iuvāre with acc., auxilium dare.

in locō esset hortus. Postquam igitur audīvit quam ob causam Herculēs vēnisset, "Ipse," inquit<sup>1</sup>, "ad hortum ibō, et filiābus meis persuādēbō ut pōma<sup>2</sup> suā sponte trā-dant." Herculēs, cum haec audiret, māgnopere gāvīsus est<sup>3</sup>; nōluit enim vim adhibēre<sup>4</sup>, sī rēs aliter<sup>5</sup> fieri posset: cōstituit igitur oblātum<sup>6</sup> auxilium accipere. Atlās tamen postulāvit ut, dum ipse abesset, Herculēs caelum umeris sustinēret. Hōc igitur negōtium<sup>7</sup> Herculēs libenter sus-cēpit; et, quamquam rēs erat summī labōris, tōtum pon-dus caelī continuōs complūrēs<sup>8</sup> diēs sōlus sustinēbat.

1. *ait, dicit.*

2. *libenter, nūllō cōgente.*

3. The perfect of *gaudeō*. cf. *laetātus est.*

4. *adferre.*

5. *aliō modō.*

6. Participle from *offerō*.

7. *Par. opus, labōrem.*

8. *permultōs.*

#### 48. Herculēs pōma ab Atlante accipit.

Atlās intereā<sup>1</sup> abierat et ad hortum Hesperidum, qui pauca milia passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē contulerat. Eō<sup>2</sup> cum vēnisset, causam veniendī exposuit, et filiās suās vehementer hortātus est ut pōma trāderent. Illae diū haerēbant<sup>3</sup>; nōlēbant enim hōc facere, quod ab ipsā Iūnōne (dē quā ante dictum est) hōc mūnus<sup>4</sup> accēperant. Atlās tamen, post multa verba, eis persuāsit ut sibi pārērent<sup>5</sup>, et pōma ad Herculem rettulit<sup>6</sup>. Herculēs intereā, cum plūrēs diēs exspectāvisset neque ūllam fāmam dē reditū Atlantis accēpisset, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tandem quīntō diē Atlantem vidit redeuntem et

1. *interim.*

2. *illūc, in eum locum.*

3. *dubitābant, haesitābant.*

4. *dōnum.*

5. cf. p. 55, l. 7.

6. *reperitavit.*



mox māgnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum postquam  
 1grātiās prō tantō beneficiō ēgit, ad Graeciam proficisci  
 mātūrāvit.

1. See idioms.

#### 49. Labor duodecim: canis Cerberus.

Postquam aurea pōma ad Eurystheum relāta sunt, ūnus 5  
 modo<sup>1</sup> relinquiēbātur ē duodecim labōribus quōs Pŷthia<sup>2</sup>  
 Herculi praecēperat<sup>3</sup>. Eurystheus autem, cum Herculem  
 māgnopere timēret, volēbat eum in aliquem locum mittere  
 unde<sup>4</sup> numquam redire posset. Negōtium<sup>5</sup> igitur eī dedit  
 ut canem Cerberum ex Orcō<sup>6</sup> in lūcem traheret. Hōc 10  
 opus omnium difficillimum erat, nēmō enim umquam ex  
 Orcō redierat. Praetereā Cerberus iste mōnstrum erat  
 horribilī speciē, cui tria erant capita serpentibus saevis  
 circumvolūta. Antequam tamen hunc labōrem nārrāmus,  
 7nōn aliēnum vidētur, quoniam dē Orcō mentiōnem fēci- 15  
 mus, pauca dē istā regiōne prōpōnere<sup>8</sup>.

1. *tantum, solum.*

2. cf. 19.

3. *imperāverat, iusserat.*

4. *ex quō.*

5. cf. p. 56, l. 8.

6. Orcus is the abode of the  
 dead, Hades.

7. *it does not seem out of  
 place.*

8. *nārrāre.*

#### 50. Orcus.

Dē Orcō, quī idem<sup>1</sup> Hādēs dicēbātur<sup>2</sup>, haec trāduntur<sup>3</sup>.  
 Ut<sup>4</sup> quisque <sup>5</sup>ē vitā discesserat, mānēs<sup>6</sup> eīus ad Orcum,

1. *quoque, etiam.*

2. *nōminābātur, appellābātur,*

*vocābātur.*

3. *feruntur, nārrantur.*

4. *whenever.*

5. *ē vitā discēdere = mori.*

6. *ghost, shade.*

sēdem mortuōrum, ā deō Mercuriō dēducēbantur. Hūius  
 regiōnis, quae sub terrā fuisse dicitur, rēx erat Plūtō, cui  
 uxor erat Prōserpina, Iovis et Cereris filia. Mānēs igitur,  
 ā Mercuriō dēducti, primum ad rīpam veniēbant Stygis<sup>1</sup>  
 5 flūminis, quō continētur<sup>2</sup> rēgnum Plūtōnis. Hōc trānsire  
 necesse erat, antequam in Orcum venire possent. Cum  
 tamen hōc flūmen nūllō ponte iūctum esset, mānēs trāns-  
 vehēbantur ā Charonte quōdam quī cum parvā scaphā<sup>3</sup>  
 ad rīpam exspectābat. Charōn prō hōc officiō<sup>4</sup> mercē-  
 10 dem<sup>5</sup> postulābat, neque volēbat quemquam, nisi hōc  
 praemium<sup>6</sup> prius dedisset, trānsvehere. Ob hanc causam  
 mōs erat apud antiqūos nummum<sup>7</sup> in ōre mortuī pōnere  
 eō cōsiliō, ut, cum ille ad Stygem vēnisset, pretium trā-  
 iectūs<sup>8</sup> solvere posset. Eī autem quī post mortem in  
 15 terrā nōn sepulti<sup>9</sup> erant, Stygem trānsire nōn potuērunt,  
 sed in litore per centum annōs errāre<sup>10</sup> coācti sunt : tum  
 dēmum licuit Orcum intrāre<sup>11</sup>.

1. The Styx was a river of  
 the infernal regions, across which  
 Charon ferried the souls of the  
 dead.

2. *cingitur, circumfluitur.*

3. *lindre.* cf. p. 50, l. 17.

4. *mūnere.*

5. *pretium.*

6. *mercēdem.*

7. *sēstertium*, a coin worth  
 about five cents.

8. *trānseundī.*

9. cf. Eng. *sepulture.*

10. *vagārī, obambulāre.*

11. *inīre, ingredi.*

### 51. Rēgnum Plūtōnis.

Postquam mānēs Stygem hōc modō trānsierant, ad alte-  
 20 rum veniēbant flūmen quod Lēthē<sup>1</sup> appellātum est. Ex hōc  
 flūmine aquam bibere cōgēbantur : quod<sup>2</sup> cum fēcissent,

1. *Lethe* means *forgetfulness.*

2. Object of *fēcissent.*

rēs omnēs in vitā gestās<sup>1</sup> ē memoriā dēpōnēbant. Dēni-  
que ad sēdem ipsam Plūtōnis veniēbant, cūius introitus<sup>2</sup> ā  
cane Cerberō custōdiēbātur. Ibi Plūtō, nigrō vestitū in-  
dūtus<sup>3</sup>, cum uxōre Prōserpinā in solio<sup>4</sup> sedēbat. Stābant  
etiā nōn procul ex eō locō tria alia solia in quibus sedē- 5  
bant Mīnōs, Rhadamanthus, et Aeacus, iūdicēs inferōrum.  
Hī mortuis<sup>5</sup> iūs dicēbant et praemia poenāsque cōstituē-  
bant : bonī enim in Campōs Elysiōs, sēdem beātōrum,  
veniēbant ; improbi<sup>6</sup> autem in Tartarum mittēbantur et  
multis variisque suppliciis<sup>7</sup> ibi excruciabantur<sup>8</sup>. 10

1. *actās.*2. *aditus.*3. *amictus, circumdatus.*4. *sellā rēgālī.*

5. See idioms.

6. Ant. *bonī.*7. *poenīs.*8. cf. Eng. *excruciating*; *tor-  
menta ferēbant.*

## 52. Cymba<sup>1</sup> Charontis.

Herculēs postquam imperia<sup>2</sup> Eurystheī accēpit, in Lacō-  
niam ad Taenarum statim sē contulit : ibi enim spēlunca<sup>3</sup>  
erat ingenti māgnitūdine, per quam (ut trādēbātur<sup>4</sup>) homi-  
nēs ad Orcum dēscendēbant. Eō<sup>5</sup> cum vēnisset, ex incolis 15  
quaesivit quō in locō spēlunca illa sita esset<sup>6</sup>: quod cum  
cōgnōvisset, sine morā dēscendere cōstituit. Nōn tamen  
sōlus hōc iter faciēbat, Mercurius enim et Minerva sē  
sociōs eī adiūxerant. Ubi ad ripam Stygis vēnit, Her-  
culēs scapham Charontis cōscendit ut ad ūteriōrem 20  
ripam trānsīret. Cum tamen Herculēs vir esset ingenti

1. *scapha, linter.*2. *iūssa, mandāta.*

3. cf. p. 53, l. 12.

4. cf. p. 57, l. 17.

5. cf. p. 56, l. 14.

6. cf. p. 55, l. 4.

māgnitūdine corporis, Charōn solvere<sup>1</sup> nōlēbat; māgnopere enim<sup>2</sup> verēbātur nē scapha sua, tantō pondere onerāta, in mediō flūmine mergerētur<sup>3</sup>. Tandem tamen, minīs<sup>4</sup> Herculis territus, Charōn scapham solvit, et eum incolu-  
5 mem ad ūleriōrem ripam perdūxit.

1. cf. 30, n. 4.

2. See idioms.

3. cf. Eng. *immerse, submerge*.4. *verbīs irātīs*.

### 53. Herculēs Cerberum ex Orcō ad urbem Eurystheī trahit.

Postquam flūmen Stygem tāli modō trānsiit, Herculēs in sēdem ipsius Plūtōnis vēnit; et, postquam causam  
10 veniendī docuit, ab eō petivit ut Cerberum auferre sibi licēret. Plūtō, quī dē Hercule fāmam accēperat, eum benignē excēpit, et facultātem<sup>1</sup> quam ille petēbat libenter dedit. Postulāvit tamen ut Herculēs, postquam iūssa Eurystheī explēvisset<sup>2</sup>, Cerberum in Orcum rūsus redū-  
15 ceret. Herculēs haec pollicitus est, et Cerberum, quem nōn sine māgnō periculō manibus prehenderat<sup>3</sup>, summō cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī trāxit. Eō<sup>4</sup> cum vēnisset, tantus pavor<sup>5</sup> animum Eury-  
stheī occupāvit ut ex ātriō<sup>6</sup> statim refūgerit: cum autem  
20 paulum<sup>7</sup> sē ex timōre recēpisset, multis cum lacrimis obsecrāvit<sup>8</sup> Herculem ut mōnstrum sine morā in Orcum redūceret. Sic, contrā omnium opiniōnem, duodecim illi labōrēs quōs Pŷthia praecēperat, intrā duodecim

1. *veniam, licentiam*.2. *exsecūtus esset*.3. *cēperat*.

4. Adv.

5. *timor*.6. The *atrium* was the principal room of a Roman house.7. *parum*. Ant. *multum, māgnopere*.8. *precātus est, obtestātus est*.

annōs cōfectī sunt<sup>1</sup>: <sup>2</sup>quae cum ita essent, Herculēs, 5  
servitūte tandem liberātus, māgnō cum gaudiō Thēbās  
rediit.

1. *perāctī sunt.*

2. See idioms.

#### 54. Herculēs et Nessus, Centaurus.

Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra<sup>1</sup> perfēcit quae 5  
nunc perscribere <sup>2</sup>longum est: tandem, iam <sup>3</sup>aetāte prō-  
vectus, Dēianīram Oeneī filiam in mātrimōnium dūxit:  
post tamen trēs annōs accidit ut puerum quendam,  
nōmine Eunomum, cāsū occideret. Cum autem mōs  
esset ut, si quis hominem cāsū occidisset, in exsilium 10  
īret, Herculēs cum uxōre suā ē finibus ēius civitātis exire  
mātūrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam  
pervēnērunt quod nūllo ponte iūctum erat, et, dum quae-  
runt quōnam<sup>4</sup> modō flūmen trāiciant<sup>5</sup>, accurrit Centaurus  
quīdam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium viātōribus obtulit. 15  
Herculēs igitur uxōrem suam in tergum Nessī imposuit:  
tum ipse flūmen nandō<sup>6</sup> trāiēcit. At Nessus, paulum in  
aquam prōgressus<sup>7</sup>, ad ripam subitō reversus est<sup>8</sup> et  
Dēianīram auferre cōnābatur<sup>9</sup>. Quod cum animadver-  
tisset<sup>10</sup> Herculēs, irā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et 20  
pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfixit.

1. *ēgregia, eximia.* The adj.  
is used substantively.

2. See idioms.

3. *senex, aetāte prōgressus.*

4. *quōnam*: the enclitic *-nam*  
makes *quō* emphatic.

5. *trāseant.*

6. *by swimming*, abl. of the  
gerund expressing means.

7. *profectus.*

8. *rediit.*

9. *temptābat.*

10. *vīdisset, intellēxisset.*

## 55. Nessus moriēns aliquid cruōris suī Dēianīrae dat.

Nessus igitur, sagittā Herculis trānsfixus, moriēns humi<sup>1</sup> iacēbat<sup>2</sup>; at, <sup>3</sup>nē occāsiōnem suī ulciscendī dimitteret, ita locūtus est: "Tū, Dēianīra, verba morientis<sup>4</sup>  
 5 audi: sī vis<sup>5</sup> amōrem mariti<sup>6</sup> tuī cōservāre, aliquid sanguinis hūius, quī ē pectore meō effunditur, sūme āc repōne<sup>7</sup>; tum, sī unquam suspiciō in mentem tuam vēnerit, vestem mariti hōc sanguine inficiēs<sup>8</sup>." Haec locūtus Nessus <sup>9</sup>animam efflāvit; Dēianīra autem nihil  
 10 mali suspicāta, imperāta<sup>10</sup> fēcit. Post breve tempus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem Oechaliae, suscēpit, et, cum rēgem ipsum cum filiis interfēcisset, Iolēn, filiam Euryti, captivam redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit, nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmunturium appulit<sup>11</sup>, et,  
 15 in terram ēgressus, āram cōstituit ut Iovī sacrificāret. Dum tamen sacrificium parat, Licham comitem suum domum mīsit quī vestem albam referret: mōs enim erat apud antiquōs, dum sacrificia faciēbant, vestem albam gerere. At Dēianīra verita<sup>12</sup> nē Herculēs amōrem ergā  
 20 Iolēn habēret, vestem, priusquam Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessi infēcit.

1. Locative case, *on the ground.*

2. Not *iaciēbat.*

3. *lest he should lose the opportunity of avenging himself.*

4. *sc. meī.*

5. From *volō.*

6. *virī, coniugis.*

7. *reconde, servā.*

8. *imbuēs, tingēs.* cf. p. 39,

1. 6.

9. *mortuus est.*

10. *mandāta, iūssa.*

11. cf. p. 48, l. 11.

12. Translate as a present participle.

## 56. Mors Herculis.

Herculēs nihil malī suspicātus, vestem, quam Lichās attulit, statim induit: post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia membra sēnsit, et quae causa esset ēius rei māgnopere mirābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus, vestem 5 dētrahere<sup>1</sup> cōnātus est: illa tamen in corpore haesit<sup>2</sup>, neque ūllō modō dīvelli<sup>3</sup> potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus, in montem Oetam <sup>4</sup>sē contulit, et in rogam<sup>5</sup> quem summā celeritāte extrūxit<sup>6</sup>, sē imposuit. Hōc cum fēcisset, eōs quī circumstābant ōrāvit ut rogam 10 quam celerrimē accenderent<sup>7</sup>: omnēs diū recūsābant<sup>8</sup>: tandem tamen pāstor quīdam, ad misericordiam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō<sup>9</sup> obscūrantur, Herculēs, dēnsā nūbe vėlātus<sup>10</sup>, ā Iove in Olypnum abrep-tus<sup>11</sup> est. 15

1. *dīvellere.*2. *adfixa est.*3. *dētrahī.*

4. See idioms.

5. *pyram.*6. *ēdūxit.* Ant. *dēstrūxit*, cf.Eng. *destruction.*7. *īnflammārent.*8. *negābant.*

9. cf. p. 54, l. 1.

10. *tēctus.*11. *ablātus.*

# VIRI ROMAE.

## I.

### MARCUS ATILIUS REGULUS.

256 B.C.

*The events here recorded took place during the First Punic War (264–241 B.C.). Regulus was celebrated not only for his heroism but also for the simplicity and the frugality of his life. Subsequent ages loved to point to him as a typical Roman.*

57. Hannō, quasi dē pāce āctūrus, ad Rēgulum vēnit.

Mārcus Rēgulus cum Poenōs māgnā clāde<sup>1</sup> adfēcisset<sup>2</sup>, Hannō Carthāginiēnsis ad eum vēnit quasi dē pāce āctūrus, rē vērā ut tempus extraheret<sup>3</sup> dōnec<sup>4</sup> novae cōpiæ ex Āfricā advenirent. Is ubi ad cōnsulem accessit<sup>5</sup>, exortus est<sup>6</sup> militum clāmor audītaque vōx, <sup>7</sup>idem huic<sup>8</sup> faciendum esse quod paucis ante annis Cornēliō cōsulī ā Poenīs factum esset. Cornēlius enim velut<sup>9</sup> in conloquium per fraudem ēvocātus ā Poenīs comprehēsus erat<sup>10</sup> et in vincula coniectus. Iam Hannō timēre incipiēbat,

1. caedēs, interneciō, calamitās.

2. aliquem māgnā clāde adfēcere = aliquem dēvincere.

3. prōdūceret, extenderet.

4. dum.

5. adiit, appropinquāvit.

6. coepit, incēpit.

7. idem . . . factum esset, ind. disc. after vōx audīta est, which suggests a verb of saying.

8. to him.

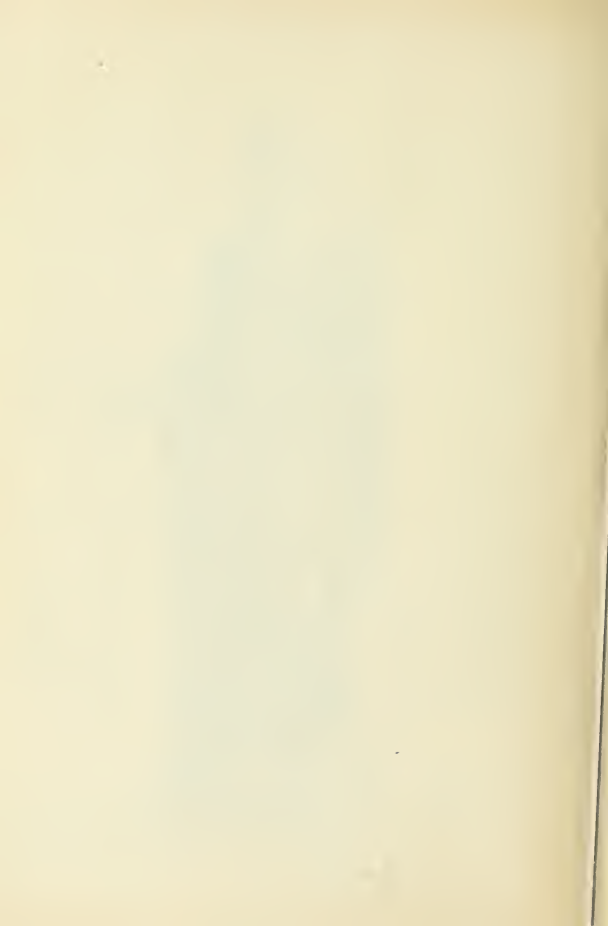
9. quasi.

10. captus erat.





ROMAN IN TOGA PRAETEXTA.



sed periculum astūtō<sup>1</sup> respōnsō āvertit: “<sup>2</sup>Hōc vērō,” inquit, “sī fēceritis, nihilō eritis Āfrīs meliōrēs.” Cōsul tacēre iussit eōs quī pār pari referri<sup>3</sup> volēbant, et conveniēns<sup>4</sup> gravitatī Rōmānae respōnsū dedit: “Istō tē metū, Hannō, fidēs Rōmāna liberat.” Dē pāce, quia 5 neque Poenus sēriō<sup>5</sup> agēbat et cōsul victōriam quam pācem mālēbat, nōn convēnit.<sup>6</sup>

1. *sagācī, sapiente.*

3. *reddī.*

2. Or. *Sī hōc vērō fēceritis,*

4. *aptum.*

*nihilō meliōrēs eritis Āfrīs.*

5. Adv. cf. *rē vērā.*

6. *pactum est.*

**58. Rēgulus deinde in Africam trāiēcit, ubi, trecentis castellis expūgnātis, ingentem serpentem occidit.**

Rēgulus deinde in Āfricam primus Rōmānōrum ducum 10 trāiēcit. Clypeam urbem et trecenta castella expūgnāvit, neque cum hominibus tantum<sup>1</sup>, sed etiam cum mōnstris dimicāvit<sup>2</sup>. Nam cum ad flūmen Bagradam castra habēret, anguis<sup>3</sup> mirā<sup>4</sup> māgnitūdine exercitum Rōmānōrum vexābat; multōs militēs ingenti ōre corripuit; plūrēs 15 caudae<sup>5</sup> verberē<sup>6</sup> ēlisit<sup>7</sup>; nōnnullōs ipsō pestilentis hālitūs<sup>8</sup> adflātū exanimāvit<sup>9</sup>. Neque is tēlōrum ictū perforārī poterat, dūriissimā<sup>10</sup> squāmārum<sup>11</sup> lōricā<sup>12</sup> omnia tēla facile repellente. Cōfugiendum fuit ad māchinās advectisque

1. Adv. *solum.*

7. *frēgit.*

2. *pūgnāvit.*

8. *spīritūs.*

3. *serpēs.*

9. *animā prīvāvit, necāvit.*

4. *ēgregiā, singulārī.*

10. *fīrmissimā.*

5. cf. Eng. *caudal*, and p. 52,

11. *of the scales.*

l. 19.

12. *lōricā est mūnīmentum*

6. *plāgā, ictū.*

*corporis.*

ballistis et catapultis, velut arx quaedam<sup>1</sup> mūnita, dēicien-  
 dus hostis fuit. Tandem saxōrum pondere oppressus  
 iacuit, sed cruōre suō flūmen corporisque pestiferō<sup>2</sup> adflātū  
 vicina loca infēcit Rōmānōsque castra inde submovēre  
 5 coēgit. Corium<sup>3</sup> bēluae<sup>4</sup>, centum et vigintī pedēs longum,  
 Rōmam misit Rēgulus.

1. *quīdam* is the nearest ap-  
 proach to the English indefinite  
 article.

2. *perniciōsō, exitiōsō.*

3. *pellis.* cf. Eng. *pell.*

4. *Bēlua est animal ingēns et  
 formīdābile.*

59. Senātus imperium Rēgulī in annum proximum prō-  
 rogāvit<sup>1</sup> et alimenta coniugī liberisque ēius dedit.

Huic ob rēs bene gestās<sup>2</sup> imperium in annum proximum  
 10 prōrogātum est. Quod ubi cōgnōvit Rēgulus, scripsit  
 senātui vilicum<sup>3</sup> suum in agellō<sup>4</sup>, quem septem iūgerūm<sup>5</sup>  
 habēbat, mortuum esse et servum<sup>6</sup> occāsionem nactum  
 aufūgisse ablātō<sup>7</sup> instrūmentō rūsticō, ideōque<sup>8</sup> petere sē  
 ut sibi successor in Āfricam mitterētur, nē, dēsertō agrō,  
 15 nōn esset unde uxor et liberī alerentur. Senātus acceptis  
 litteris rēs quās Rēgulus amiserat pūblicā pecūniā redimī<sup>9</sup>  
 iussit, agellum colendum locāvit<sup>10</sup>, alimenta coniugī ac  
 liberis praebuit<sup>11</sup>.

1. *prōdūxit, extendit.*

2. *factās.*

3. *vilicus est praefectus villae  
 cui tōta rērum rūsticārum cūra  
 commissa est.*

4. *parvō agrō.*

5. gen. of measure. A iūge-  
 rum is about  $\frac{2}{3}$  of an acre.

6. Par. *occāsione fōrtuitō in-  
 ventā.*

7. From *ab-ferō.*

8. *et ob hanc rem.*

9. *recipi, reddi, repōnī.*

10. *let, lease.*

11. *dedit, trādidit.*

60. Carthāginiēnsēs, dūrīs pācis condiciōnibus impositis,  
ā Lacedaemoniis auxilium petiērunt.

Rēgulus deinde multis proeliis Carthāginiēnsium opēs contudit<sup>1</sup> eōsque pācem petere coēgit. Quam cum Rēgulus nōllet nisi dūrissimis condiciōnibus dare, ā Lacedaemoniis illi auxilium petiērunt. 5

1. Ant. *auxit*.

61. Rēgulus ā Xanthippō victus et captus est.

Lacedaemoniī Xanthippum, virum belli peritissimum, Carthāginiēnsibus misērunt, ā quō Rēgulus victus est ūltimā perniciē; nam duo tantum<sup>1</sup> milia hominum ex 10 omnī Rōmānō exercitū refūgērunt et Rēgulus ipse captus et in carcerem coniectus est.

1. *solum*.

62. Inde Rōmam dē permūtandis captivis missus est.

Inde Rōmam dē permūtandis captivis missus est datō iūreiūrandō ut, sī nōn impetrāsset<sup>1</sup>, rediret ipse Carthāginiem. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, inductus in senātum mandāta exposuit; <sup>2</sup>sententiam nē diceret recūsāvit<sup>3</sup>; quam diū iūreiūrandō hostium tenērētur, sē nōn esse senātorem. Iūssus tamen sententiam dicere, <sup>4</sup>negāvit esse ūtile captivōs Poenōs reddi, illōs enim adulēscētēs 20 esse et bonōs ducēs, sē iam cōnfectum<sup>5</sup> senectūte. Cūius

1. *exorāsset, precibus obtinisset, perfēcisset.*

2. Translate as if *sententiam dicere.*

3. *dētrectāvit, nōluit.* The

idea of *saying* in this verb governs the ind. disc. of the following sentence.

4. *dixit nōn esse.*

5. *dēbilitātum.*

cum valuisset<sup>1</sup> auctōritās, captīvi retenti sunt, ipse, cum retinērētur ā propinquis et amicis, tamen Carthāginem rediit; neque vērō tunc ignōrābat sē ad crūdēlissimum hostem et ad exquisita<sup>2</sup> supplicia<sup>3</sup> proficīscī, sed iūsiūrandum cōservandum<sup>4</sup> putāvit.

1. *plūs potuisset, vīcisset.*2. *eximia, singulāria.*3. *poenās.*4. *sc. esse.*

### 63. Rēgulus Carthāginem revertit et summō suppliciō occīsus est.

Reversum<sup>1</sup> Carthāginiēnsēs omnī cruciātū<sup>2</sup> necāvērunt<sup>3</sup>; palpebrīs<sup>4</sup> enim resectis<sup>5</sup> diū eum in locō tenebricōsō<sup>6</sup> tenuērunt; deinde, cum sōl esset ārdentissimus, eum repente ēductum intuērī caelum coēgērunt; postrēmō<sup>7</sup> in ārcam<sup>8</sup> ligneam undique clāvīs<sup>9</sup> praeacūtis horrentem<sup>10</sup> et tam angustam ut ērēctus perpetuō manēre cōgerētur, eum inclūsērunt. Ita dum fessum<sup>11</sup> corpus, quōcunque incli-  
nābat, stimulis ferreīs cōfoditur<sup>12</sup>, vigiliis et dolōre continuō interēptus est<sup>13</sup>. Hīc fuit Atilī Rēguli exitus<sup>14</sup>, ipsā vitā clārior et inlūstrior.

1. *Reversum* agrees with *eum* understood, object of *necāvērunt*.2. *tormentō, dolōre.*3. *occīdērunt, interfēcērunt.*4. *eyelids.*5. *rescissīs, amputātīs.*6. *obscurō, sine lūmine.*7. *dēnique, tandem, ad extrēmum.*8. *cistam.* cf. *ark, chest.*9. *nails.*10. *horridam, asperam.*11. *dēfessum, fatigātum.*12. *pungitur, volnerātur.*13. *necātus est.*14. *fīnis vitāe, mors.*

## II.

## PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS.

218-183 B.C.

*This Scipio, known as Africanus Major to distinguish him from Africanus Minor, the hero of the Third Punic War, was of a noble line of ancestors. He first distinguished himself in 218 B.C., when but sixteen years of age, by saving his father's life in battle. It was his supreme glory to conquer Hannibal and bring the Second Punic War to a successful conclusion.*

## 64. Pueritia Scipiōnis.

Pūblius Cornēlius Scipiō, nōndum annōs pueritiae ēgres-  
sus patrem singulārī virtūte servāvit; quī cum, pūgnā  
apud Ticinum contrā Hannibalem commissā, graviter vol-  
nerātus in hostium manūs iam iam ventūrus esset, filius, 5  
interiectō corpore, Poenis inruentibus<sup>1</sup> sē opposuit et pa-  
trem periculō liberāvit.

1. *invādentibus, impetum facientibus.*

## 65. Aedilis creātus.

Quae pietās Scipiōnī postea aedilitātem petenti favōrem  
populī conciliāvit<sup>1</sup>. Cum obsisterent tribūnī plēbis, <sup>2</sup>ne- 10  
gantēs ratiōnem eius esse habendam quod nōndum ad  
petendum lēgitima aetās esset, "Sī mē," inquit Scipiō,  
"omnēs Quiritēs aedilem facere volunt, satis annōrum  
habeō." Tantō inde favōre ad suffrāgia<sup>3</sup> itum est ut tri-  
būnī inceptō<sup>4</sup> dēsisterent. 15

1. *attulit, comparāvit.*

2. *saying that he ought not to  
be considered.*

3. *cf. suffrage.*

4. *cōnsiliō.*

66. Post calamitātem Cannēnsem summa imperī ad eum  
dēlāta est<sup>1</sup>. Coēgit nōbilēs quōsdam iuvenēs iūrāre  
ipsōs rem pūblicam nōn dēsertūrōs esse.

Post clādem Cannēnsem Rōmāni exercitūs reliquiae  
5 Canusium perfūgerant ; cumque<sup>2</sup> ibi tribūni militum quat-  
tuor essent, tamen omnium cōsēnsū ad Pūblium Scīpi-  
ōnem admodum<sup>3</sup> adulēscētem summa imperī dēlāta est<sup>1</sup>.  
Quibus cōsultantibus nūntiat Pūblius Fūrius Philus,  
cōsulāris virī filius, nōbilēs quōsdam iuvenēs propter  
10 dēsperātiōnem cōsiliū dē Italiā dēsērendā inire<sup>4</sup>. Sta-  
tim in hospitium<sup>5</sup> Metellī, quī coniūrātiōnis erat pīnceps,  
sē contulit Scīpiō ; et cum conciliū ibi iuvenum, de qui-  
bus adlātum erat<sup>6</sup>, invēnisset, <sup>7</sup>strictō super capita cōn-  
sultantium gladiō, "Iūrāte," inquit, "vōs neque ipsōs  
15 rem pūblicam populī Rōmāni dēsertūrōs neque aliū  
cīvem Rōmānum dēsēre passūrōs<sup>8</sup>; quī nōn iūrāverit,  
in sē hunc gladium strictum esse sciat." <sup>9</sup>Haud secus  
pavidī quam sī victōrem Hannibalem cernerent<sup>10</sup>, iūrant  
omnēs, custōdiendōsque<sup>11</sup> sēmet ipsōs Scīpiōni trādunt.

1. tribūta est.

2. Concessive.

3. valdē.

4. capere.

5. domum.

6. nūntiātum erat.

7. strictō gladiō, drawing his  
sword.

8. permissūrōs, concessūrōs.

9. Par. nōn aliter timidī.

10. vidērent.

11. tuendōs, dēfendendōs.

20 67. In Hispāniam Scīpiōnem Rōmāni mittunt.

Cum Rōmāni duās clādēs<sup>1</sup> in Hispāniā accēpissent  
duoque ibi summī imperātōrēs<sup>2</sup> intrā diēs trīgintā cecidis-

1. damna, calamitātēs.

2. ducēs.



sent<sup>1</sup>, placuit<sup>2</sup> exercitum augēri eōque<sup>3</sup> prōcōnsulem mitti ; nec tamen quem mitterent, satis cōstābat<sup>4</sup>. Eā dē rē<sup>5</sup> indicta sunt comitia. Primō<sup>6</sup> populus exspectābat ut, qui sē tantō dignōs imperiō crēderent, nōmina profitērentur<sup>7</sup>; sed nēmō audēbat illud imperium suscipere. 5 Maesta<sup>8</sup> igitur civitās ac<sup>9</sup> prope inops cōsili comitiōrum diē in campum dēscendit. Subitō P. Cornēlius Scipiō, quattuor et viginti fermē<sup>10</sup> annōs nātus<sup>11</sup>, professus<sup>12</sup> sē petere, in superiōre, unde<sup>13</sup> cōspicī posset, locō cōstitit. In quem postquam omnium ōra conversa sunt, <sup>14</sup>ad ūnum 10 omnēs Scipiōnem in Hispāniā prōcōnsulem esse iussērunt. At postquam animōrum impetus resēdit<sup>15</sup>, populum Rōmānum coepit<sup>16</sup> factī paenitēre<sup>17</sup>; aetātī Scipiōnis māximē diffidēbant. Quod ubi animadvertit Scipiō, advocātā cōntiōne ita māgnō ēlātōque<sup>18</sup> animō dē bellō quod geren- 15 dum esset disseruit<sup>19</sup> ut hominēs cūrā liberāret spēque certissimā implēret.

1. *interfecti essent, mortui essent.*

2. *optimum visum est.* The subject is the following infinitive clause.

3. *et in illum locum.*

4. Par. *manifestum erat.*

5. *a general assembly was called.*

6. *at first.*

7. Par. *publicē confiterentur.*

8. *tristis.*

9. Par. *paene sine consilio.*

10. *paene, prope.*

11. *old.* See idioms.

12. *that he was a candidate.*

13. *ex quo.*

14. Par. *nē unō quidem exceptō.* See idioms.

15. *requiēvit.*

16. *incēpit.* It is used impersonally here.

17. *repent.* Remember that this verb takes the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing.

18. *altō, excelsō.*

19. *dixit, locutus est.*

68. **Profectus in Hispāniam, Carthāginem Novam expūgnāvit et clēmentiā in Celtibērōrum prīncipem adulēscēntem, eam gentem Rōmānis coniūxit.**

Profectus igitur in Hispāniam Scīpiō Carthāginem  
 5 Novam, <sup>1</sup>quō diē vēnit, expūgnāvit. <sup>2</sup>Eō congestae erant  
 omnēs paene Āfricae et Hispāniae opēs<sup>3</sup>, ibi arma, ibi  
 pecūnia, ibi tōtīus Hispāniae obsidēs erant ; quibus om-  
 nibus potitus est<sup>4</sup> Scīpiō. Inter captivōs ad eum adducta  
 est eximiae<sup>5</sup> fōrmae adulta virgō. Quam ubi comperit<sup>6</sup>  
 10 inlūstrī locō inter Celtibērōs nātam<sup>7</sup> prīncipīque ēius gentis  
 adulēscēnti dēspōnsam<sup>8</sup> esse, arcessitīs<sup>9</sup> parentibus et  
 spōnsō<sup>10</sup>, eam reddidit. Parentēs virginis, qui <sup>11</sup>ad eam  
 redimendam satis māgnū aurī pondus attulerant, Scīpi-  
 ōnem ōrābant ut id ā sē dōnum acciperet. Scīpiō aurum  
 15 ante pedēs pōnī iussit vocātōque ad sē virginis spōnsō,  
 "Super<sup>12</sup> dōtem<sup>13</sup>," inquit, "quam acceptūrus ā socerō<sup>14</sup>  
 es, haec tibi ā mē dōtālia dōna accēdent<sup>15</sup>," aurumque  
 tollere<sup>16</sup> ac sibi habēre iussit. Ille domum reversus <sup>17</sup>ad  
 20 āvit.

1. *eō diē quō vēnit.*

2. *in id oppidum.*

3. *dīvitiāe, opulentia.*

4. *potior* takes the ablative.

5. *ēgregiae, praestantis.*

6. *invēnit.*

7. *ortam.*

8. *in mātirimōnium prōmis-*  
*sam.*

9. *ad sē vocātīs.*

10. *her betrothed.*

11. *to ransom her.*

12. *in addition to.*

13. *Dōs est id quod datur*  
*puellae quae in mātirimōnium*  
*datur.*

14. *father-in-law.*

15. *addentur.*

16. *Pax. dē terrā levāre.*

17. *to requite the favor to*  
*Scīpio. See idioms.*

69. Scipiō Hasdrubalem expellit; captivōs partim dimit-  
tit partim vēdit. Nārrātiō dē Massivā, captivō rēgiō.

Deinde Scipiō Hasdrubalem victum ex Hispāniā expul-  
lit. Castris hostium potitus omnem praedam<sup>1</sup> militibus  
concessit<sup>2</sup>, captivōs Hispānōs sine pretiō domum dimisit; 5  
Āfrōs vērō vēdī iussit. Erat inter eōs puer adultus rēgiī  
generis, fōrmā insigni<sup>3</sup>, quem cum percontārētur<sup>4</sup> Scipiō  
quis et cuiās<sup>5</sup> esset, et cūr<sup>6</sup> id aetātis in castris fuisset,  
"Numida sum," inquit puer, "Massivam popularēs<sup>7</sup>  
vocant; orbus<sup>8</sup> ā patre relictus, apud avum māternum, 10  
Numidiae rēgem, ēducātus sum. Cum avunculō<sup>9</sup> Masi-  
nissā, quī nūper<sup>10</sup> subsidiō Carthāginiēnsibus vēnit, in  
Hispāniam trāiēcī; prohibitus propter aetātem ā Masi-  
nissā numquam ante<sup>11</sup> proelium iniī. Eō diē quō pūgnā-  
tum est cum Rōmānis, insciō<sup>12</sup> avunculō, clam<sup>13</sup> armis 15  
equōque sūmptō<sup>14</sup>, in aciem exiī; ibi prōlapsō equō cap-  
tus sum ā Rōmānis." Scipiō eum interrogat<sup>15</sup> velletne  
ad avunculum revertī? Cum effūsīs gaudiō lacrimis id  
vērō sē cupere puer dīceret, tum Scipiō puerō ānulum<sup>16</sup>  
aureum equumque ōrnātum dōnat datisque quī tūtō<sup>17</sup> 20  
dēdūcerent equitibus<sup>18</sup>, dimisit.

1. *spolia.*

2. *dedit.*

3. *eximiā.*

4. *interrogāret.*

5. *unde, ex quō locō.*

6. *at that time of life*; see In-  
troduction IV, 16, 4, c.

7. *civēs meī.*

8. *sine parentibus.*

9. *maternal uncle.*

10. *lately.*

11. An adverb.

12. *nesciō, ignorante.*

13. *occultē, ant. palam.*

14. *captō.*

15. *percontātur.*

16. *ring.*

17. An adverb = *sine perī-  
culō.*

18. *abl. abs. with datīs.*

70. Scīpiō rēgis appellātiōnem per māgnitūdinem animī  
dēnegat.

Cum Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō sē ergā Hispānōs clē-  
menter gessisset<sup>1</sup>, circumfūsa multītūdō eum rēgem in-  
5 genti<sup>2</sup> cōnsēnsū appellāvit; at Scīpiō silentiō per prae-  
cōnem<sup>3</sup> factō, "Nōmen imperātōris," inquit, "quō mē  
mei milītēs appellārunt, mihi māximum est: rēgium  
nōmen, alibi<sup>4</sup> māgnū, Rōmae intolerābile est. Si id  
amplissimum<sup>5</sup> iūdicātis<sup>6</sup> quod rēgāle est, vōbīs licet exi-  
10 stimāre rēgālem in mē esse animum; sed ōrō<sup>7</sup> vōs ut ā  
rēgis appellātiōne abstineātis." Sēnsere<sup>8</sup> etiā barbari  
māgnitūdinem animī quā Scīpiō id āspērnbātūr<sup>9</sup> quod  
cēteri mortālēs admīrantur et concupiscunt<sup>10</sup>.

1. *sē gerere.* See idioms.

2. *immēnsō, māximō.*

3. *herald.*

4. *aliō in locō.*

5. *clārissimum.*

6. *putātis, existimātis.*

7. *petō, rogō.*

8. *vīderunt, intelligērunt.*

9. *rēiciēbat.*

10. *vehementer cupiunt.*

71. Scīpiō, receptā Hispāniā, in Āfricā lēgātum cum  
15 dōnis misit quī amicitiam Syphācis, Maurōrum rēgis,  
conciliāret.

Scīpiō, receptā Hispāniā, cum iam bellum in ipsam Āfri-  
cam trānsferre meditārētur, conciliandōs prius rēgum et  
gentium animōs existimāvit. Syphācem, Maurōrum rē-  
20 gem, opulentissimum tōtius Āfricae rēgem, quem māgnō  
ūsui sibi fore<sup>1</sup> spērāret, primum temptāre statuit<sup>2</sup>. Itaque  
lēgātum cum dōnis ad eum misit C. Laelium, quōcum  
intimā familiāritāte vivēbat. Syphāx amicitiam Rōmā-

1. *futūrum esse.*

2. *dēcrēvit.*

nōrum sē accipere adnuit<sup>1</sup> sed fidem nec dare nec accipere nisi cum ipsō cōram<sup>2</sup> duce Rōmānō voluit.

1. *adsēnsit, adfirmāvit.*

2. *face to face.*

**72. Scīpiō ipse in Āfricam trāiēcit et ibi Hasdrubalem hostem forte invēnit.**

Scīpiō igitur in Africam trāiēcit. Forte ita incidit ut eō 5  
ipsō tempore Hasdrubal, pulsus ex Hispāniā, ad eundem  
portum appelleret<sup>1</sup>, Syphācis amicitiam pariter petitūrus<sup>2</sup>.  
Uterque ā rēge in hospitium invitātus<sup>3</sup>. <sup>4</sup>Cēnātum simul  
apud rēgem est, eōdem etiam lectō<sup>5</sup> Scīpiō atque Has-  
drubal accubuērunt<sup>6</sup>. Tanta autem inerat cōmitās<sup>7</sup> in 10  
Scīpiōne ut nōn Syphācem modo sed etiam hostem infē-  
stissimum<sup>8</sup> Hasdrubalem sibi conciliāret. Scīpiō <sup>9</sup>foedere  
ictō cum Syphāce in Hispāniam ad exercitum rediit.

1. *admōvēret, put in, bring to land; sc. nāvem. cf. p. 48, l. 11.*

2. Expresses purpose.

3. *sc. est.*

4. *They dined together with the king.*

5. *couch.*

6. *reclined.*

7. *benīgnitās, adfāibilitās.*

8. *inimīcissimum.*

9. *Pax. amīcitiā cōfirmātā.*

**73. Masinissa, amicitiam cum Scīpiōne iungere cupiēns, in conloquium cum eō vēnit. Scīpiō eum in societātem 15 recēpit.**

Masinissa quoque amicitiam cum Scīpiōne iungere <sup>1</sup>iam  
dūdum cupiēbat. Quā rē ad eum trēs Numidārum prin-  
cipēs misit ad tempus locumque conloquiō statuendum<sup>2</sup>.  
Duōs prō obsidibus retinēri ā Scīpiōne iubet; remissō 20

1. *had long desired.*

2. *praescribendum, adsignandum.*

tertiō quī Masinissam ad locum cōstitūtum addūceret, Scīpiō et Masinissa cum paucis in conloquium vērunt. Cēperat iam ante<sup>1</sup> Numidam ex fāmā<sup>2</sup> rērum gestārum admirātiō virī, sed māior praesentis<sup>3</sup> venerātiō cēpit ; erat enim in voltū<sup>4</sup> māiestās summa ; accēdēbat<sup>5</sup> <sup>6</sup>prōmissa caesariēs habitusque<sup>7</sup> corporis, nōn <sup>8</sup>cultus munditiīs, sed virilis vērē ac militāris et flōrēns iuventā. Prope attonitus ipsō congressū Numida <sup>9</sup>grātiās dē filiō frātris remissō agit : adfirmat sē ex eō tempore eam quaesivisse occāsionem, quam tandem oblātam<sup>10</sup> nōn omiserit<sup>11</sup> ; cupere sē illi et populō Rōmānō <sup>12</sup>operam nāvāre. Laetus eum Scīpiō audivit atque in societātem recēpit.

1. An adverb.

2. *rumōre*.3. sc. *virī*.4. *faciē*.5. *addēbātur*.6. *long hair*.7. *fōrma, figūra, speciēs*.8. *ōrnātus ēlegantiā*.9. *grātiās . . . agit*. See idioms.10. *datam*.11. *praetermiserit*.12. *auxilium dare*.

74. Scīpiō Rōmam rediit et cōsul factus in Siciliam prōvinciam suam trāiēcit. Nārrātur quō modō sine publicā impēnsā<sup>1</sup> Scīpiō suōs equitēs parāverit.

Scīpiō deinde Rōmam rediit et <sup>2</sup>ante annōs cōsul factus est. Sicilia eī prōvincia dēcrēta est permissumque<sup>3</sup> ut in Africam inde<sup>4</sup> trāiceret. Quī cum vellet ex fortissimīs peditibus Rōmānīs trecentōrum equitum numerum complēre nec posset illōs subitō armīs et equīs instruere<sup>5</sup>, id prūdenti cōsiliō perfēcit. Namque ex omni

1. cf. *expense*.2. sc. *iūstōs*. See idioms.3. sc. *est*.4. i.e. *ex Sicilia*.5. *adōrnāre*.

Siciliā trecentōs iuvenēs nōbilissimōs et ditissimōs, <sup>1</sup>qui equis militārent et sēcum in Āfricam trāicerent, lēgit<sup>2</sup> diemque eis ēdixit quā equis armisque instrūcti<sup>3</sup> atque ōrnāti adessent. Gravis<sup>4</sup> ea militia<sup>5</sup>, procul domō, terrā marique multōs labōrēs, māgna pericula adlātūra vidē- 5 bātur; neque ipsōs modo, sed parentēs cōgnātōsque<sup>6</sup> eōrum ea cūra angēbat<sup>7</sup>. Ubi diēs quae dicta erat advēnit, arma equōsque ostendērunt<sup>8</sup>, sed <sup>9</sup>omnēs ferē<sup>10</sup> longinquum et grave bellum horrēre<sup>11</sup> appārēbat. Tunc Scipiō militiam eis sē remissūrum ait<sup>12</sup>, si arma et equōs 10 militibus Rōmānis voluissent trādere. Laetī condiōnem accēpērunt iuvenēs Siculi. Ita Scipiō sine pūblicā impēnsā suōs instrūxit ōrnāvitque equitēs.

1. *to serve as cavalry.*

2. *ēlēgit. cf. elect.*

3. *parātī.*

4. acc. plural agreeing with

*labōrēs.*

5. *bellum.*

6. *coniūctōs sanguine.*

7. *vexābat, sollicitōs reddēbat.*

8. *mōstrāvērunt.*

9. *omnēs . . . horrēre is sub-*

*ject of appārēbat.*

10. *paene, prope.*

11. *vehementer timēre.*

12. *dixit.*

75. Scipiō ex Siciliā in Āfricam māgnō militum ārdōre profectus, castra in proximis tumulis posuit. Speculā- 15 tōrēs hostium in castris captōs nōn solum sine suppliciō dīmisit, sed etiam tōtum exercitum ostendit.

Tunc Scipiō ex Siciliā in Āfricam ventō secundō profectus est tantō militum ārdōre, ut nōn ad bellum dūci vidērentur, sed ad certa victōriae praemia. Celeriter 20 nāvēs ē cōspectū Siciliae ablātae sunt <sup>1</sup>cōspectaque brevī

1. Or. *et brevī (tempore) Africae litora cōspecta (sunt).*

tempore Āfricae litora. Scipiō cum ēgrediēns<sup>1</sup> ad terram ē nāvī prōlapsus esset<sup>2</sup> et ob hōc attonitōs<sup>3</sup> militēs cerneret, id quod trepidātiōnem adferēbat in hortātiōnem convertēns, "Āfricam oppressi<sup>4</sup>," inquit<sup>5</sup>, "militēs!"<sup>6</sup> Expositis  
 5 cōpiis in proximis tumulis castra mētātus est<sup>7</sup>. Ibi speculātōrēs hostium in castris dēprehēnsōs et ad sē perductōs nec suppliciō affēcit nec dē cōnsiliis āc viribus<sup>8</sup> Poenōrum percontātus est<sup>9</sup>, sed<sup>10</sup> circā omnēs Rōmānī exercitūs manipulōs cūrāvit dēdūcendōs; deinde interro-  
 10 gātōs num<sup>11</sup> ea satis cōsiderāssent quae speculārī<sup>12</sup> erant iūssī, prandiō<sup>13</sup> datō incolumēs<sup>14</sup> dīmisit.

1. *exiēns.*

2. *cecidisset.*

3. *metū permōtōs.*

4. A pun: the word being used in the sense of 'press against or upon' or of 'conquer, or subdue.'

5. *dixit, ait.*

6. Par. *cōpiis ē nāvibus dīmissis.*

7. *posuit.*

8. *cōpiis.*

9. *interrogāvit.*

10. Par. *dedit mandāta ut circā tōtum Rōmānum exercitum dēdūcerentur.*

11. *whether.*

12. *īnspicere, explōrāre.*

13. *cibō.*

14. *salvōs, integrōs.*

**76. Masinissa sē Scipiōnī coniūnxit, sed Syphāx, quī ad Poenōs dēfēcerat, victus Rōmam missus est.**

Scipiōnī in Āfricam advenientī Masinissa sē coniūnxit  
 15 cum parvā equitum turmā<sup>1</sup>. Syphāx vērō ā Rōmānis ad Poenōs dēfēcerat. Hasdrubal, Poenōrum dux, Syphāx-que Scipiōnī sē opposuērunt, quī utriusque castra ūnā nocte perrūpit<sup>2</sup> et incendit. Syphāx ipse captus et vīvus

1. *manū.*

2. *penetrāvit, vī ingressus est.*



ad Scīpiōnem pertractus est<sup>1</sup>. <sup>2</sup>Syphācem in castra addūcī cum essēt nūntiātum, omnis velut ad spectāculum triumphī multitudō effūsa est; praecēdēbat ipse vinc<sup>3</sup>, sequēbātur grex<sup>4</sup> nōbīlium Maurōrum. <sup>5</sup>Movēbat omnēs fortūna virī cūius amicitiam ōlim Scīpiō petierat. Rēgem aliōsque captivōs Rōmam misit Scīpiō; Masinissam qui ēgregiē<sup>6</sup> rem Rōmānam adiūverat<sup>7</sup> aureā corōnā dōnāvit.

1. *dēductus est.*

4. *multitudō.*

2. Or. *cum nūntiātum esset Syphācem in castra addūcī, omnis multitudō, etc.*

5. Or. *fortūna virī cūius amicitiam Scīpiō ōlim petierat, omnēs movēbat.*

3. *in vinculīs.*

6. *eximiē, excellenter.*

7. *auxilium dederat, with the dative.*

77. Hannibal ex Italiā ad dēfendendam patriam revocātur.

Haec et aliae quae sequēbantur clādēs<sup>1</sup>, Carthāginiēnsibus tantum terrōris intulērunt ut Hannibalem ex Italiā ad tuendam patriam revocārent. <sup>2</sup>Frendēns gemēnsque āc vix lacrimis temperāns<sup>3</sup> is dicitur lēgātōrum verba audisse mandātisque pāuisse<sup>4</sup>. Respēxit saepe Italiae litora, sēmet accūsāns quod nōn victōrem exercitum statim ab Cannēnsī pūgnā Rōmam dūxisset.

1. *calamitātēs.*

3. *abstinēns, parcēns.*

2. *gnashing his teeth and groaning.*

4. *to have obeyed, with the dative.*

78. Hannibal et Scīpiō ad conloquium conveniunt, sed pāce nōn factā pūgnātum est et Hannibal victus fūgit.

Zamam vēnerat Hannibal, quae urbs quinque diērum iter ā Carthāgine abest, et nūntium ad Scīpiōnem misit

ut conloquendi sēcum potestātem faceret. Scīpiō cum conloquium haud abnuisset<sup>1</sup>, diēs locusque cōstituitur. Itaque congressi sunt<sup>2</sup> duo clārissimī suae aetātis<sup>3</sup> ducēs. Stetērunt <sup>4</sup>aliquam diū taciti mūtuāque admirātiōne dēfixi.

5 Cum vērō de condiōnibus pācis <sup>5</sup>inter eōs nōn convēnisset, ad suōs <sup>6</sup>sē recēpērunt renūntiantēs<sup>7</sup> armis dēcernendum<sup>8</sup> esse. Commissō deinde proeliō, Hannibal victus cum quattuor equitibus fūgit. <sup>9</sup>Cēterum cōstat utrumque dē alterō cōfessum esse <sup>10</sup>nec melius instruī aciem  
10 nec ācrius potuisse pūgnārī.

1. *rēiēcisset, recūsāvisset.*

2. *convēnērunt.*

3. *temporis, saeculī.*

4. *for some time.*

5. *nōn cōsēnsissent.*

6. *revertērunt, rediērunt.*

7. *referentēs, dēclārantēs.*

8. *dēcīdendum, dēpūgnandum.*

9. *Par. sed fīrma opīniō omnium est.*

10. *that the battle-line could not have been better arranged nor the battle more bravely fought.*

79. Scīpiō victis Carthāginiēnsibus lēgēs imposuit et Rōmam revertit ubi Africānus ab grātulantibus cīvibus appellātus est.

Carthāginiēnsēs metū perculsi<sup>1</sup> ad petendam pācem  
15 ōrātōrēs<sup>2</sup> mittunt, trigintā civitātis principēs. Quī ubi in castra Rōmāna vēnērunt, veniam<sup>3</sup> civitāti petēbant, nōn culpam pūrgantēs<sup>4</sup> sed initium culpae in Hannibalem trānsferentēs. Victis lēgēs imposuit Scīpiō. Lēgātī, cum nullās condiōnēs recūsārent<sup>5</sup>, Rōmam profecti sunt, ut,  
20 quae ā Scīpiōne pacta essent<sup>6</sup>, ea patrum āc populī auctō-

1. *impulsi, permōti.*

2. *lēgātōs.*

3. *remissiōnem.*

4. *excūsantēs.*

5. *rēicerent.*

6. *cōstitutā essent.*

ritāte cōfirmārentur. <sup>1</sup> Ita pāce terrā marique partā<sup>1</sup> Scipiō exercitū in nāvēs impositō Rōmam revertit. Ad quem advenientem concursus ingēns<sup>2</sup> factus est: effūsa nōn ex urbibus modo, sed etiam ex agris multitudō viam obsidēbat<sup>3</sup>. Scipiō inter grātulantium plausūs triumphō omnium clārissimō <sup>4</sup>urbem est invectus <sup>5</sup>primusque nōmine victae ā sē gentis est nōbilitātus Āfricānusque appellātus. 5

1. factā.

2. immēnsus.

3. occupābat.

4. Par. in urbem ductus est.

5. primusque . . . nōbilitātus,

and he was the first to be made

famous.

80. Opiniō populī dē Scipiōne quae cōfirmāta dictis eius factisque est. 10

Ex hīs rēbus gestis<sup>1</sup> virum eum esse virtūtis divīnae volgō<sup>2</sup> crēditum est. <sup>3</sup>Id etiam dicere haud piget quod scriptōres dē eō litteris mandāvērunt<sup>4</sup>, Scipiōnem cōsuēvisse<sup>5</sup>, <sup>6</sup>priusquam dilūcēsceret, in Capitōlium ventitāre<sup>7</sup> ac iubēre aperiri cellam Iovis atque ibi solum diū dēmo- 15 rārī<sup>8</sup>, quasi cōsultantem dē rē publicā cum Iove: aedituōsque<sup>9</sup> eius templi saepe esse mirātōs, quod eum <sup>10</sup>id temporis in Capitōlium ingredientem canēs, semper in aliōs saevientēs<sup>11</sup>, nōn lātrārent<sup>12</sup>. <sup>13</sup>Hās volgī dē Sci-

1. tractis, actis.

2. Adv. = ab omnibus.

3. I am not reluctant to tell this too.

4. tradiderunt.

5. consuetudinem habuisse.

6. ante lucem.

7. frequenter venire.

8. manere.

9. custodes.

10. eō tempore.

11. furentes.

12. bark.

13. Or. dicta factaque eius pleraque admiranda videbantur confirmare atque approbare has opinionēs volgī dē Scipiōne.

piōne opīniōnēs cōfirmāre atque approbāre vidēbantur dicta factaque ēius plēraque admiranda, ex quibus est ūnum hūiuscemodi<sup>1</sup>: assidēbat<sup>2</sup> oppugnābatque oppidum in Hispāniā, sitū moenibusque ac dēfēnsōribus  
 5 validum et mūnitum, rē etiam cibāriā<sup>3</sup> cōpiōsum, neque ūlla ēius potiendī<sup>4</sup> spēs erat. Quōdam diē iūs<sup>5</sup> in castris sedēns dicēbat Scīpiō atque ex eō locō id oppidum procul vidēbātur. Tum ē militibus quī in iūre apud eum stābant, interrogāvit quispiam<sup>6</sup> ex mōre in quem diem  
 10 locumque vadēs sistī iubēret. Et Scīpiō manum ad ipsam oppidī quod obsidēbātur arcem prōtendēs, "Perendiēs<sup>8</sup>," inquit, "sēsē sistant illō in locō" atque ita factum<sup>9</sup>. Diē tertiā in quam vadēs sistī iusserat, oppidum captum est. Eōdem diē in arce ēius oppidī  
 15 iūs dixit.

1. *as follows.*

2. *obsidēbat.*

3. *frūmentāriā.*

4. *capiendī.*

5. Object of *dicēbat*, tr. *was pronouncing judgment.*

6. *quīdam*, subject of *interrogāvit*, connect with *ē militibus.*

7. *he ordered the securities to*

*appear.*

8. *diē tertiā.*

9. *sc. est.*

### 81. Hannibal victus ad Antiochum Syriae rēgem cōnfūgit ubi cum Scīpiōne conlocūtus est.

Hannibal ā Scīpiōne victus suisque invisus<sup>1</sup> ad Antiochum Syriae rēgem cōnfūgit eumque hostem Rōmānis  
 20 fēcit. Missī sunt Rōmā lēgātī ad Antiochum, in quibus erat Scīpiō Africānus; quī, cum Hannibale Ephesi<sup>2</sup> conlocūtus, ab eō quaesivit quem fuisse māximum imperātōrem crēderet. Respondit Hannibal Alexandrum Mace-

1. *odiōsus.*

2. *Locative.*

donum rēgem māximum sibi vidērī, quod parvā manū innumerābilēs exercitūs fūdisset<sup>1</sup>. Quaerentī deinde quem secundum pōneret, “Pyrrhum,” inquit, “quod primus <sup>2</sup>castra mētārī docuit nēmōque illō ēlegantius loca cēpit et praesidia disposuit.” Sciscitanti<sup>3</sup> dēnique quem 5 tertium dūceret<sup>4</sup>, sēmet ipsum dixit. Tum ridēns Scīpiō, “Quidnam tū dicerēs,” inquit, “sī mē vicissēs?” Tūm mē<sup>6</sup> vērō,” respondit Hannibal, “et ante Alexandrum et ante Pyrrhum et ante omnēs aliōs imperātōrēs posuissem.” Ita imprōvisō adsentatiōnis<sup>7</sup> genere Scīpiōnem ē 10 grege imperātōrum velut inaestimābilem sēcernēbat<sup>8</sup>.

1. *dīpersisset.*

2. *limitēs castrōrum statuere.*

3. *quaerentī.*

4. *putāret, habēret.*

5. *What in the world would*

*you have said?*

6. *Obj. of posuissem.*

7. *flattery.*

8. *sēparābat, dīvidēbat.*

## 82. Scīpiō imperātōr, nōn bellātōr.<sup>1</sup>

Scīpiō ipse fertur<sup>2</sup> quōdam dixisse, cum eum quīdam parum pūgnācem dīcerent, “Imperātōrem mē māter, nōn bellātōrem peperit<sup>3</sup>”. Īdem dicere solitus est, nōn solum 15 dandam esse viam fugientibus, sed etiā mūniendam<sup>4</sup>.

1. *aptus bellō.*

2. *dīcitur.*

3. *creāvīt, genuit.*

4. *faciendam.*

## 83. Scīpiō, lēgātus Lūcī frātris, in Asiam profectus est.

Dēcrētō adversus Antiochum bellō cum Syria prōvincia obvēnisset<sup>1</sup> Lūciō Scīpiōnī, <sup>2</sup>quia parum in eō putābātur

1. *had fallen to the lot.*

2. *Or. quia parum animī putābātur in eō esse.*

esse animī, parum rōboris, senātus gerendī hūius belli cūram mandārī<sup>1</sup> volēbat conlēgae eius C. Laeliō. Surgēns tunc Scipiō Africānus, frāter māior<sup>2</sup> Lūcī Scipiōnis, illam familiae ignōminiam dēprecātus est: dixit in frātre suō  
 5 summam esse virtūtem, summum cōsiliū<sup>3</sup>, sēque eī lēgātum fore prōmīsit. Quod cum ab eō esset dictum, nihil est dē Lūcī Scipiōnis prōvinciā commūtātum: itaque frāter nātū māior minōrī lēgātus in Asiam profectus est et tam diū eum cōsiliō operāque adiūvit<sup>4</sup>, dōnec trium-  
 10 phum ille et cōgnōmen Asiātici peperisset<sup>5</sup>.

1. *darī.*3. *prudentiam.*2. *sc. nātū.*4. *auxilium dedit.*5. *comparāvisset.*

**84. Antiochus filium Pūbli Scipiōnis cēpit sed incolumem eum remisit.**

Eōdem bellō filius Scipiōnis Africāni captus est et ad Antiochum dēductus. Benignē et liberāliter adulēscen-  
 15 tem rēx habuit<sup>1</sup>, quamquam ab eius patre <sup>2</sup>tum māximē finibus imperī pellēbātur. Cum deinde pācem Antiochus ā Rōmānis peteret, lēgātus eius Pūblium Scipiōnem adiit eīque filium sine pretiō redditūrum rēgem dixit, sī per eum pācem impetrāset<sup>3</sup>. Cui Scipiō respondit, "Abī, nūntiā  
 20 rēgī, mē prō tantō mūnere<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup>grātiās agere; sed nunc aliam grātiā<sup>6</sup> nōn possum referre quam ut eī suādeam<sup>7</sup> ut bellō absistat et pācis condiōnem nullam recūset." Pāx nōn convēnit; tamen Antiochus Scipiōnī filium

1. *tractāvit.*

5. See idioms.

2. *just at that time.*6. *grātiā referre.* See idi-3. *obtinuisset.*

oms.

4. *dōnō.*7. *horter, moneam.*

remisit tantique viri māiestātem venerārī<sup>1</sup> quam dolōrem suum ulciscī māluit<sup>2</sup>.

1. *colere.*

2. *wished rather.*

85. Vīctō Antiochō Scīpiō, indignātus quod dē praedā quaeritur et sua innocentia in dubium vocātur, ratiōnum<sup>1</sup> librum dīripuit et senātum adlocūtus est. 5

Vīctō Antiochō cum praedae ratiō ā L. Scīpiōne repōscerētur<sup>2</sup>, Āfricānus prōlātum ab eō librum, <sup>3</sup>quō acceptae et expēnsae summae continēbantur et refelli<sup>4</sup> inimicōrum accūsātiō poterat, discerpsit, indignātus dē eā rē dubitārī<sup>5</sup> quae sub ipsō lēgātō administrāta esset. Quin etiam 10  
<sup>6</sup>hunc in modum verba fēcit: “<sup>7</sup>Nōn est quod quaerātis, patrēs cōscriptī, num parvam pecūniam in aerārium rettulerim, quī antea illud Pūnicō aurō replēverim, neque mea innocentia potest in dubium vocārī. Cum Āfricam tōtam potestātī vestrae subiēcerim, nihil ex eā praeter 15  
cōgnōmen rettuli. Nōn igitur mē Pūnicae<sup>8</sup>, nōn frātre meum Asiāticae gazae<sup>9</sup> avārum reddidērunt; sed uterque nostrūm invidiā quam pecūniā est locuplētior<sup>10</sup>.” Tam cōstantem<sup>11</sup> dēfēsiōnem Scīpiōnis ūniversus senātus comprobāvit. 20

1. *of accounts.*

2. *repeterētur.*

3. *in which the sums received and expended were entered and by which . . .*

4. *refūtārī.*

5. *Used impersonally.*

6. *ita dīxit.*

7. *You have no reason to ask.*

8. *sc. gazae avārum reddidērunt.*

9. *dīvitiāe.*

10. *dīvitiōr.*

11. *fīrman.*

86. Deinde tribūnī plēbis fraude Scīpiōnem accūsāvērunt, sed ille causam nōn dīxit et ab urbe in Līternīnum concessit.

Deinde Scīpiōnī Āfricānō duo tribūnī plēbis <sup>1</sup>diem  
 5 dixērunt, quod praedā ex Antiochō captā aerārium frau-  
 dāsset. Ubi causae dicendae<sup>2</sup> diēs vēnit, Scīpiō māgnā  
 hominum frequentiā in Forum est dēductus. Iūssus cau-  
 sam dicere rōstra cōscendit et corōnā triumphālī capiti  
 suō impositā, "Hōc ego diē," inquit, "Hannibalem Poe-  
 10 num, imperiō nostrō inimicissimum, māgnō proeliō vīci  
 in terrā Āfricā pācemque nōbis et victōriam peperī<sup>3</sup> inspē-  
 rābilem. Nē igitur sīmus adversus deōs ingrātī, sed <sup>4</sup>cēn-  
 seō relinqūamus nebulōnēs hōs eāmusque nunc prōtinus  
 in Capitōlium Iovī optimō māximō supplicātum<sup>5</sup>." Ā  
 15 rōstris in Capitōlium ascendit; simul<sup>6</sup> sē ūniversa cōn-  
 tiō<sup>7</sup> ab accūsātōribus āvertit et secūta Scīpiōnem est, nec  
 quisquam praeter <sup>8</sup>praecōnem quī reum citābat, cum tri-  
 būnīs remānsit. Celebrātior is diēs favōre hominum fuit  
<sup>9</sup>quam quō triumphāns dē Syphāce rēge et Carthāginiēn-  
 20 sibus urbem est ingressus. Inde, nē amplius tribūniciīs  
 iniūriīs vēxārētur, in Līternīnum concessit, ubi reliquam  
 ēgit aetātem<sup>10</sup> sine urbis dēsideriō<sup>11</sup>.

1. diem cōstituērunt, i.e. for  
the trial.

2. dēfendendae.

3. comparāvī.

4. Par. moneō ut hōs fallācēs  
hominēs relinqūamus.

5. Supine expressing purpose.

6. eōdem tempore.

7. conventus.

8. the herald who summoned  
the accused.

9. than the one on which.

10. tempus vitae.

11. longing.



87. Complūrēs praedōnum ducēs convenērunt ut Scīpiōnem vidērent. Mortuus est Scīpiō.

Cum in Līternīnā villā <sup>1</sup>sē continēret, complūrēs praedōnum ducēs ad eum videndum forte tōnflūxērunt. Quōs cum ad vim<sup>2</sup> faciendam venīre existimāset, praesidium<sup>3</sup> 5 servōrum in tēctō<sup>4</sup> conlocāvit aliaque parābat quae ad eōs repellendōs opus<sup>5</sup> erant. Quod ubi praedōnēs animadvertērunt, abiectis armīs iānuae appropinquant et clārā vōce nūntiant Scīpiōnī sē<sup>6</sup> nōn vitae eius hostēs, sed virtūtis admirātōrēs vēnisse, cōspectum tantī virī, 10 quasi caeleste aliquod beneficium, expetentēs<sup>7</sup>; <sup>8</sup>proinde nē gravārētur sē spectandum praebēre. Haec postquam audivit Scīpiō <sup>9</sup>forēs reserārī eōsque intrōdūcī iussit. Illī postēs iānuae tanquam religiōsissimam āram venerātī, cupidē Scīpiōnis dextram apprehendērunt<sup>10</sup> āc diū 15 deōsculātī sunt<sup>11</sup>; deinde positīs ante vestibulum dōnis, laeti <sup>12</sup>quod sibi Scīpiōnem ut vidērent contigisset<sup>13</sup>, domum revertērunt. Paulō post mortuus est Scīpiō moriēnsque ab uxōre petiit nē corpus suum Rōmam referretur. 20

1. actātem ageret, vīveret.

2. iniūriam.

3. custōdēs.

4. domō.

5. necessāria.

6. Subject of vēnisse.

7. cupientēs.

8. Pax. itaque nē molestē ferret

sē exhibēre or sē ad spectāculum dare.

9. iānuās aperīrī.

10. cēpērunt.

11. kissed.

12. Or. quod sibi contigisset ut Scīpiōnem vidērent.

13. evēnisset.

## III.

## MARCUS PORCIUS CATO.

234-149 B.C.

*Cato is one of the best-known and most striking figures of Roman history, being famous as a soldier, as a civil magistrate, and as a writer. In every respect he was a typical Roman of the old days. As a soldier he won renown in the Second Punic War. His hostility to Carthage was unrelenting and has become proverbial. He distinguished himself in civil affairs, especially by his censorship. He stood for all that was simple, frugal, and virtuous against the growing luxury and corruption of the time, and administered his office so rigorously that the name of Censor has clung to him to this day. Cato wrote on history and agriculture, and is among the earliest writers of Latin prose.*

88. **Adulēscētia Catōnis et sua frūgālītās temperantiaque.**

Mārcus Porcius Catō, ortus<sup>1</sup> mūnicipiō<sup>2</sup> Tusculō, adulēscēntulus, priusquam honōribus<sup>3</sup> operam daret, rūri in praediis<sup>4</sup> paternis versātus est<sup>5</sup>, deinde Rōmam dēmigrāvit et in Forō esse coepit. <sup>6</sup>Primum stipendium meruit <sup>7</sup>annōrum decem septemque, Quīntō Fabiō, M. Claudiō cōsulibus. Castra secūtus est C. Claudi Nerōnis eiusque opera māgnī<sup>8</sup> aestimāta in proeliō apud Sēnam, quō cecidit Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis. Ab adulēscēntiā <sup>10</sup>frūgālītātem temperantiamque coluit. <sup>9</sup>Pellibus haedinis prō strāgulis utēbātur, eōdem cibō quō militēs vēscēbātur ;

1. *nātus.*2. *oppidō.*3. *cūrāret, attenderet.* See idioms.4. *agrīs.*5. *mānsit, fuit.*6. *He served his first campaign in his seventeenth year.*7. *annōrum, etc.,* is gen. of description modifying the understood subject of *meruit*.

8. gen. of value, cf. Introduction IV, 16, 2, c.

9. *He used kid skins for coverings.*

cum in castris erat, aquam, si <sup>1</sup>nimiō aestū torquerētur, acētum<sup>2</sup>, si virēs dēficerent, paululum vini sūmēbat<sup>3</sup>.

1. Par. *māximō calōre vexārētur.* 2. *vinegar.* 3. *capiebāt, bibēbat.*

89. Catō quaestor Scīpiōnī Āfricānō qui lūxuriae aman-  
tissimus fuit, cum eō inimicē vīxit et Rōmae renūtiāvit  
rēs male apud exercitum Scīpiōnis sē habēre, quod crī- 5  
men Scīpiō facile refūtāvit.

Quaestor Scīpiōnī Āfricānō obtigit<sup>1</sup> et cum eō parum  
amicē vīxit; nam parsimōniae amāns, sūmptūs<sup>2</sup> quos  
Scīpiō faciēbat haud probābat. Quā rē eō relictō Rō-  
mam rediit ibique Scīpiōnis vitam palam<sup>3</sup> et acerbē repre- 10  
hendit, quasi<sup>4</sup> eō duce solverētur<sup>5</sup> disciplina militāris.  
Dictitābat<sup>6</sup> illum <sup>7</sup>cum palliō et crepidis solitum ambulāre  
in Gymnasiō, libellis<sup>8</sup> eum palaestraeque operam dare,  
militum licentiae indulgēre. Quod crīmen nōn verbō,  
sed factō diluit<sup>9</sup> Scīpiō. Nam cum eā dē rē lēgātī Rōmā 15  
Syrācūsās missī essent, Scīpiō exercitum omnem eō<sup>10</sup> con-  
venire et classem expediri<sup>11</sup> iussit, tamquam dimicandum<sup>12</sup>  
eō diē terrā marique cum Carthāginiēnsibus esset; postrī-  
diē lēgātīs inspectantibus pūgnae simulācrum<sup>13</sup> ēdidit.  
Tum eis armāmentāria, horrea<sup>14</sup>, omnemque belli apparā- 20  
tum ostendit. Reversī Rōmam lēgātī omnia apud exer-  
citus Scīpiōnis praeclārē<sup>15</sup> sē habēre renūtiārunt.

1. *fell to the lot of.*

2. *expenditures.*

3. *apertē, nōn occultē.*

4. *on the ground that.*

5. *laxārētur.*

6. Intensive of *dīcō.*

7. *in a pallium* (a Grecian  
mantle) *and Grecian shoes.*

8. *parvīs librīs.*

9. *pūrgāvit, refellit.*

10. *in eum locum.*

11. *parārī.*

12. *pūgnandum.*

13. *imāginem.*

14. *granaries.*

15. *ēgregiē, optimē, see idioms.*

90. **Asperitās Catōnis in lūxum mātrōnārum.**

Eādem asperitāte Catō mātrōnārum lūxum insectātus est<sup>1</sup>. Namque in mediō ārdōre bellī Pūnicī Oppius, tribūnus plēbis, lēgem tulerat<sup>2</sup> quā mulierēs<sup>3</sup> Rōmānae  
 5 plūs sēmūnciam<sup>4</sup> aurī habēre, vestimentō versicolōri ūtī, iūctō<sup>5</sup> vehiculō in urbe vehī vetābantur. Cōfectō<sup>6</sup> autem bellō et flōrente rē pūblicā, mātrōnae ut pristinus<sup>7</sup> ōrnātus sibi redderētur postulābant; omnēs viās urbis obsidēbant virōsque ad Forum dēscendentēs ōrābant  
 10 ut lēgem Oppiam abrogārent. Quibus ācerrimā ōrātiōne restitit Catō, sed frūstrā, nam lēx est abrogāta.

1. *persecutus est.*4. *a half-ounce.*2. *proposuerat.*5. *sc. equis.*3. Subject of *vetābantur.*6. *finitō.*7. *antiquus.*91. **Catō cōsul in Hispāniam profectus est. Victor Rōmam reversus dē Hispāniā triumphāvit.**

Catō, creātus cōsul, in Hispāniam adversus Celtibērōs  
 15 profectus eōs ācri proeliō victōs ad dēditionem compulit. Eō in bellō cum ūltimis<sup>1</sup> militum parsimōniā, vigiliīs, labōre certābat<sup>2</sup> nec in quemquam gravius sevēriusque imperium exercēbat quam in <sup>3</sup>sēmet ipsum. Cum Hispānōs ad dēfectiōnem prōnōs<sup>4</sup> vidisset, <sup>5</sup>cavendum iūdicāvit  
 20 nē possent rebellāre. Id autem effectūrus sibi vidēbātur, sī eōrum mūrōs diruisset<sup>6</sup>. Sed veritus nē, sī id ūniversis

1. *lowest, humblest.*4. *inclinātōs, proclivēs.*2. *cum ūltimis certābat = ūltimōs superāre cōnābātur.*5. *Par. putāvit prospiciendum esse.*3. *Emphatic form of sē.*6. *ēvertisset.*

civitatibus imperasset commūnī ēdictō, nōn obtemperārent<sup>1</sup>, scripsit singulis ut diruerent mūnimenta<sup>2</sup>, minātus<sup>3</sup> bellum nisi cōnfestim<sup>4</sup> obtemperassent, epistulāsque ūniversis civitatibus eōdem diē reddi iussit. Cum ūna quaeque<sup>5</sup> sibi<sup>6</sup> sōlī imperārī putāret, ūniversae pārūerunt. 5  
Catō Rōmam reversus de Hispāniā triumphāvit.

1. *pārērent, dictō audirent.*

5. sc. *civitas.*

2. *moenia.*

6. dat. after *imperārī* used

3. *threatening.*

impersonally.

4. *mox, statim, sine morā.*

## 92. Disciplīnae militāris exemplum.

Disciplīnam militārem summā servābat sevērītate. Ab hostilī quondam litore, in quō per aliquot diēs mānserat, cum ter datō profectiōnis signō classem<sup>1</sup> solvisset<sup>2</sup> et 10  
<sup>3</sup>relictus ē militibus quidam ā terrā vōce et gestū <sup>4</sup>expostulāret uti tollerētur, circumāctā ad litus ūniversā classe, comprehēsum suppliciō adfici iussit et quem <sup>5</sup>occisūrī <sup>6</sup>per ignōminiam hostēs fuerant, exemplō potius impendit<sup>7</sup>.

1. *nāvēs.*

*versā classe ad litus circumāctā,*

2. *loosed, cf. 30, n. 4.*

*eum comprehendī et suppliciō ad-*

3. Or. *quidam ē militibus re-*  
*lictus.*

*fici iussit.*

5. *occisūrī . . . fuerant =*

4. Par. and or. *vehementer*  
*postulāret ut auferretur, ūni-*

*would have killed.*

6. *ignōminiōsē.*

7. *he used.*

93. Cēnsor deinde factus Catō plūrimōs nōbilēs sevērē 15  
pūnivit inter quōs Lūcius Flāmininus, vir cōsulāris, fuit.

Cēnsor deinde factus sevērē eī praefuit potestātī. Nam cum<sup>1</sup> in complūrēs nōbilēs animadvertit tum<sup>1</sup> imprimis<sup>2</sup>

1. *nōn solum . . . sed etiam.*

2. *praesertim, maximē.*

Lūcium Flāminīnum, vīrum cōnsulārem, senātū mōvit. Cui inter cētera facinora<sup>1</sup> illud obiēcit. Cum esset in Galliā Flāminīnus, mulierem fāmōsam<sup>2</sup> ad cēnam vocāvit<sup>3</sup> eīque forte inter cēnandum<sup>4</sup> dixit multōs <sup>5</sup>capitis damnātōs in vinculis esse quōs secūrī<sup>6</sup> percussūrus esset<sup>7</sup>. Tum illa negāvit sē umquam vidisse quemquam secūrī ferientem et pervelle<sup>8</sup> id vidēre. Statim Flāminīnus ūnum ex illis miseris addūcī iussit et ipse secūrī percussit<sup>9</sup>. Quid atrōcius quam inter pōcula<sup>10</sup> et epulās ad spectāculum<sup>11</sup> mulieris hūmānam vīctimam mactāre<sup>12</sup> et mēnsam cruōre respergere? Eō magis autem illum pūniendum putāvīt Catō, quod amplissimī honōris māiestātem tam taetrō<sup>13</sup> facinore inquināverat<sup>14</sup>.

1. *scelera.*2. *infāmem, malam.*3. *invītāvit.*4. *epulandum.*5. *ad mortem condemnātos.*6. *axe.*7. *caesūrus esset.*8. *valdē velle.*9. *sc. eum.*10. *cup.*11. *entertainment.*12. *occidere, interficere.*13. *foedō, turpī, horridō.*14. *polluerat.*

94. Catō patrēs addūxit ut bellum Carthāginiēnsibus  
indīcerent.

15

Cum in senātū dē tertiō Pūnicō bellō agerētur<sup>1</sup>, Catō iam senex dēlendā<sup>2</sup> Carthāginem cēnsuit negāvitque eā stante salvam esse posse rem pūblicam. Quod<sup>3</sup> cum, contrādicente Scīpiōne Nāsīcā, nōn facile patribus persuādēret, postea, quidquid in senātū cōsultābātur, Catō adiciēbat<sup>4</sup>, "Ego cēnsēō Carthāginem esse dēlendā."

1. *dēliberārētur.*2. *sc. esse.*3. *Direct obj. of persuādēret.*4. *addēbat.*

Tandem attulit quōdam diē in cūriam <sup>1</sup>praecocem ficum ostendēnsque patribus, "Interrogō vōs," inquit, "quandō hanc ficum dēmtam<sup>2</sup> putētis ex arbore?" Cum omnēs recentem esse dicerent, "<sup>3</sup>Atquī tertium," inquit, "ante diem scītōte dēcerptam esse Carthāgine; tam prope ā 5 mūrīs habēmus hostem." Mōvit ea rēs patrum animōs et bellum Carthāginiēnsibus indictum est.

1. *an early fig.*

2. *dētractam, dēcerptam, sc. esse.*

3. "*But yet," said he, "be*

*assured that it was picked day before yesterday at Carthage."*

95. Catō fuit optimus pater et ipse in omnibus rēbus filium instituit.

Fuit Catō ut senātor ēgregius ita bonus pater. Cum 10 eī nātus esset filius, nūllis negōtiis nisi pūblicis impediēbātur <sup>1</sup>quō minus matrī adesset infantem abluenti<sup>2</sup> et fasciis<sup>3</sup> involventi. Ubi aliquid intellegere potuit puer, eum pater ipse in litteris instituit<sup>4</sup>, etsi idōneum<sup>5</sup> et ērudītum domi servum habēbat. Nōlēbat enim servum filiō 15 maledicere vel aurem vellicāre<sup>6</sup>, si tardior in discendō esset; neque<sup>7</sup> filium tantī benefici, id est doctrinae, dēbitōrem esse servō. Itaque ipse eius lūdi<sup>8</sup> magister, ipse lēgum doctor, ipse lanista<sup>9</sup> fuit. Cōscripsit manū suā grandibus litteris historiās, ut etiam in paternā domō 20

1. *Tr. freely from being present when the mother, etc.; but what literally?*

2. *cf. ablution.*

3. *swaddling-clothes.*

4. *ērudīvit, docuit, ēducēvit.*

5. *aptum.*

6. *to pull.*

7. *et nōn volēbat.*

8. *scholae.*

9. *athletic trainer.*

ante oculōs prōposita habēret<sup>1</sup> veterum<sup>2</sup> institūta et exempla.

1. sc. *fīlius*.

2. *antiquōrum hominum*.

96. Dēlectātiōnēs agricultūrae Catō malēbat quam omnēs aliās rēs.

5 Agricultūrā plūrimum<sup>1</sup> dēlectābātur Catō mālēbatque agrōrum et pecorum frūctū quam<sup>2</sup> faenore ditēscere. Ā quō cum quaererētur quid māximē in rē familiārī expediret<sup>3</sup>, respondit, “<sup>4</sup>Bene pāscere.” Quid secundum<sup>5</sup>? “Satis bene pāscere.” Quid tertium<sup>5</sup>? “Male pāscere.”  
10 Quid quartum<sup>5</sup>? “Arāre<sup>6</sup>.” Et cum ille, quī quaesierat, dixisset, “Quid faenerārī<sup>5</sup>?” tum Catō “Quid<sup>5</sup>,” inquit, “hominem occidere?”

1. *māximē*.

2. *to become rich by usury*.

3. *was profitable*.

4. Par. *bonōs gregēs et pecora*

*alere* or *nūtrīre*.

5. sc. *expediret*.

6. *to till the soil*.

97. Dē mōribus Catōnis.

15 Scripsit ipse villās suās nē tēctōriō<sup>1</sup> quidem esse praelitās<sup>2</sup> atque addidit, “Neque mihi aedificātiō<sup>3</sup> neque vās<sup>4</sup> neque vestimentem ūllum est pretiōsum; sī quid est quō ūtī possim, ūtor; sī nōn est, facile careō<sup>5</sup>. <sup>6</sup>Mihi vitiō quīdam vertunt quod multīs egeō; at ego illis vitiō tribuō quod nequeunt<sup>7</sup> egēre.” Ipse scriptum reliquit sē

1. *plaster*.

2. *covered*.

3. *aedificium*.

4. *utensil, dish*.

5. *abstineō*.

6. Par. *Quīdam mihi culpae attribuunt quod multīs rēbus careō*.

7. *nōn possunt*.



numquam vestem induisse<sup>1</sup> quae māiōris preti quam centum dēnāriōrum<sup>2</sup> esset; <sup>3</sup>cum cōsulātum gereret, idem vīnum bibisse <sup>4</sup>quod opificēs, et obsōnium<sup>5</sup> ad cēnam ē Forō comparāsse<sup>6</sup> trīginta sēstertiis<sup>7</sup> idque rei pūblīcae causā fēcisse. Unde<sup>8</sup> Seneca ait, “<sup>9</sup>Mārcum Catōnem 5 tam rei pūblīcae Rōmānae prōfuit nāscī quam Scīpiōnem; alter enim cum hostibus nostris bellum, alter cum mōribus gessit.”

1. Par. *suō corporī circumdedisse.*

2. A denarius is about 18 cents.

3. Par. *cum cōsul esset.*

4. *as the laboring men.*

5. *cibum.*

6. *ēmissee.* Ant. *vēndidisse.*

7. A sestertius is 4.1 cents.

8. *quam ob rem.*

9. Or. *tam prōfuit rei pūblīcae Rōmānae Mārcum Catōnem nāscī quam Scīpiōnem (nāscī). tam . . . quam, as much . . . as.*

### 98. Patientia Catōnis ergā inimicōs.

Iniūriārum patientissimus fuit Catō. Cui cum <sup>1</sup>cau- 10 sam agentī in frontem mediam inspūisset<sup>2</sup> Lentulus quidam, abstersit<sup>3</sup> faciem et, “Adfirmābō,” inquit, “omnibus Lentule, falli<sup>4</sup> eōs quī tē negant <sup>5</sup>ōs habēre.” Ab aliō homine improbō contumēliis prōscissus<sup>6</sup>, “Iniqua<sup>7</sup>,” inquit, “tēcum mihi est pūgna; tū enim probra<sup>8</sup> facile 15 audis et dīcis libenter: mihi vērō et dicere ingrātum et audire insolitum<sup>9</sup>.” Dicere solēbat acerbōs inimicōs

1. *arguing a case.* See idioms.

2. *spit into.*

3. *wiped off.*

4. *dēcipī, in errore esse.*

5. Used in a double sense;

literally it means ‘to have a

mouth,’ in a derived sense as here, ‘to be impudent.’

6. *adfectus, lacerātus.*

7. *inaequālis, impār.*

8. *maledicta, contumēliās.*

9. *inūsītātum, praeter cōsuētūdinem.*

melius dē nōbīs merērī quam eōs amicōs quī dulcēs vidērentur ; illōs<sup>1</sup> enim saepe vērūm dicere, hōs numquam.

1. *illōs . . . hōs, the former . . . the latter.*

**99. Catō acūtē hominī cuidam superstitiōsō respondet.**

Homō quīdam superstitiōsus repperit<sup>1</sup> quondam <sup>2</sup>caligās suās ā sōricibus adrōsās. Hōc ostentō<sup>3</sup> turbātus<sup>4</sup>, cōsuluit<sup>5</sup> Catōnem quid malī portenderētur. Cui ille "Nōn est," inquit, "ostentum, quod sōricēs adrōsērunt caligās ; at vērō sī caligae adrōsissent sōricēs, id fuisset ostentum."

1. *discovered.*

3. *ōmine, prōdigio.*

2. *that his boots had been gnawed by mice.*

4. *perterritus.*

5. *See idioms.*

10 **100. Catō ab inimicīs accūsātus saepe, numquam māgnam virtūtis fāmam āmīsīt. Nōn illum ēnervāvit senectūs, sed paulātīm sine sēnsū adiit. Annōs quīnque et octō-gintā nātus mortuus est.**

Catō ab adulēscentiā usque ad extrēmam aetātem ini-  
15 micitiās rei pūblicae causā suscipere nōn dēstitit<sup>1</sup>. Ipse a multīs accūsātus nōn modo <sup>2</sup>nūllum existimātiōnis dētrimentum fēcīt, sed quoad<sup>3</sup> vīxit virtūtum laude crēvit<sup>4</sup>. Quartum et octōgēnsimum annum agēns ab inimicīs capitālī crimine accūsātus suam ipse causam perōrāvit<sup>5</sup>, nec  
20 quisquam aut memoriā ēius tardiōrem aut lateris<sup>6</sup> firmi-

1. *cessāvit.*

4. *auctus est*

2. *suffered no loss in esteem.*

5. *perēgit.*

3. *quam diū.*

6. *of his lungs.*

tātem imminūtā aut ōs<sup>1</sup> haesitātiōne impedītum animadvertit. Nōn illum ēnervāvit nec adfixit senectus; eā aetāte aderat amicīs, veniēbat in senātum frequēns. Graecās etiam litterās senex didicit. Quandō obrēperet<sup>2</sup> senectūs, vix intellēxit. Sēnsim sine sēnsū ingravēscēbat<sup>3</sup> 5 aetās; nec subitō frācta est<sup>4</sup>, sed diūturnitāte<sup>5</sup> quasi extincta. Annōs quinque et octōgintā nātus excessit ē vitā.

1. *linguam, sermōnem.*

3. *gravior fiēbat.*

2. *crept upon (him).*

4. *abrupta est.*

5. *longitūdine temporis.*

#### IV.

### LUCIUS AEMILIUS PAULUS MACEDONICUS.

168 B.C.

*Aemilius Paulus was one of the best specimens of the Roman nobility. He would condescend to no mean action to win personal advantage. He was a model soldier and an astute lawyer, and throughout his life won the admiration of all classes by the purity and integrity of his character. He was born about 230 B.C.; died 160 B.C. His greatest achievement, which gave him his cognomen, was his victory over Perseus, King of Macedonia, in his second consulship (168 B.C.). His triumph was the most splendid that Rome had yet seen.*

**101.** Paulus cōsul, profectus in Macedoniam, ōmine adductus est ut in hostem pergeret.

Aemilius Paulus ēius quī ad Cannās cecidit, filius erat. 10 Cōsul factus Macedoniam prōvinciam sortitus est<sup>1</sup>, in quā Perseus, Philippī filius, paternī in Rōmānōs odi

1. *sorte obtinuit.*

hērēs<sup>1</sup>, bellum renovāverat. <sup>2</sup>Quī cum eā ipsā diē, quā eī ut bellum cum Perseō gereret obtigerat<sup>3</sup>, domum <sup>4</sup>ad vesperum rediret, filiolum<sup>5</sup> suam Tertiam, quae tum erat admodum<sup>6</sup> parva, osculāns<sup>7</sup> animadvertit trīsticulam<sup>8</sup>.  
 5 “Quid est,” inquit, “mea Tertia? quid trīstis es?” “Mī pater,” inquit, “Persa periit.” (Erat autem mortuus catellus<sup>9</sup> eō nōmine.) Tum ille artius<sup>10</sup> puellam complexus, “Accipiō ōmen,” inquit, “mea filia.” Ita ex  
 10 fōrtuītō dictō quasi spem certam clārissimī triumphī animō praesūmpsit<sup>11</sup>. Ingressus deinde Macedoniam rēctā<sup>12</sup> ad hostem perrēxit<sup>13</sup>.

1. *heir.*

2. Or. *Quī cum rediret domum ad vesperum eā ipsā diē quā obtigerat eī ut bellum cum Perseō gereret, osculāns suam filiolum Tertiam, quae tum admodum parva erat, animadvertit (eam) esse trīsticulam.*

3. *evēnerat, acciderat.*

4. *ad occāsum sōlis.*

5. Diminutive of *filiam*.

6. *very.*

7. *kissing.*

8. Diminutive of *trīstem*.

9. *puppy.*

10. *strictius.*

11. *praecēpit.*

12. *sc. viā.*

13. *contendit.*

**102. Dēfectiō<sup>1</sup> lūnae ā Sulpiciō Gallō praedicta māximum terrōrem Macedonibus intulit.**

Cum duae aciēs in cōspectū essent, Sulpicius Gallus,  
 15 tribūnus militum, Rōmānum exercitum māgnō metū liberāvit. Is enim, cum lūnae dēfectiōnem nocte sequenti futūram praescīret, ad cōntiōnem<sup>2</sup> vocātis militibus nē quis id prō portentō acciperet, dixit, “Nocte proximā lūna ab hōrā secundā ūsque ad quartam hōram dēfec-

1. *eclipse.*

2. *conventum.*

tūra est. Id, quia nātūrālī ōrdine et statīs temporibus fit, <sup>1</sup>et scīrī ante et praedicī potest. Itaque quem ad modum nēmō mirātur lūnam<sup>2</sup> nunc plēnō orbe nunc senēscēntem<sup>3</sup> exiguō<sup>4</sup> cornū fulgēre<sup>5</sup>, <sup>6</sup>ita nē obscūrārī quidem, quandō<sup>7</sup> umbrā terrae conditur, in prōdigium dēbet trahī<sup>8</sup>.” Nocte 5 igitur ēditā<sup>9</sup> hōrā lūna cum dēfēcisset, <sup>10</sup>Rōmānīs mīlitibus Gallī sapientia probē dīvina vidērī; Macedonēs<sup>11</sup>, ut trīste prōdigium, occāsū rēgnī pernīciemque gentis portendēns, mōvit.

1. *can both be known beforehand and predicted.*

2. Subject of *fulgēre*.

3. *dēcrēscēntem*.

4. *parvō*.

5. *lūcēre*.

6. Or. *ita in prōdigium dēbet trahī nē (lūnam) obscūrārī quidem quandō conditur umbrā terrae.*

7. *cum, ubi*.

8. *interpretārī*.

9. *appointed*, agrees with *hōrā*.

10. Or. *Rōmānīs mīlitibus sapientia Gallī vidērī probē dīvīna. vidērī* is a historical infinitive = *vidēbātur*. *probē* = *altogether*.

11. Object of *mōvit*, which has *dēfectiō lūnae* understood for its subject.

103. Post paucōs diēs Aemilius Paulus Perseum vīcit. 10

Post vīctōriam cōsul vehementer sollicitus erat dē filiō suō quī in castra ex proeliō nōn redierat, sed ille tardius reversus patrem suum māgnā cūrā liberāvit.

Paucīs diēbus post Aemilius Paulus cum Perseō ācerimē dīmīcāvit. Macedonum exercitus caesus fugātus- 15 que est<sup>1</sup>; rēx ipse cum paucīs fūgit. Fugientēs persecūtus est Aemilius ūsque ad initium noctis, tum sē in castra victor recēpit. Reversum<sup>2</sup> gravis cūra angēbat<sup>3</sup>, quod

1. *in fugam datus est*.

2. Agrees with *eum* understood, object of *angēbat*.

3. *sollicitum reddēbat*.

filium minōrem<sup>1</sup> in castris nōn invēnisset. Pūblius Scī-  
piō is erat, <sup>2</sup>Āfricānus et ipse postea dēlētā Carthāgine  
appellātus, quī, decimum septimum tunc annum agēns<sup>3</sup>,  
dum ācrius sequitur hostēs, in partem aliam turbā ablātus  
5 erat. Sērius cum redisset, tunc dēmum, receptō sōspite<sup>4</sup>  
filiō, victōriae tantae gaudium cōsul sēnsit.

1. sc. nātū.

name *Aemilianus* also, to mark

2. *himself also afterwards called Africanus for the destruction of Carthage.* He had the

him as the son of *Aemilius Paulus*.

3. See idioms.

4. *salvō, incolumī.*

**104. Perseus captus ad cōsulem perductus est, quī eum  
māximā clēmētīā recēpit.**

Victus Perseus in templum Samothrācēn<sup>1</sup> cōnfūgerat  
10 ibique in angulō obscurō dēlitiscēns<sup>2</sup> dēprehēnsus et cum  
filiō nātū māximō ad cōsulem perductus est. Nōn  
aliās<sup>3</sup> ad ūllum spectāculum tanta multitudō occurrit.  
Pullā<sup>4</sup> veste amictus<sup>5</sup> Perseus ingressus est castra, nullō  
suōrum aliō comite quī socius calamitātis miserābiliōrem  
15 eum faceret. Prōgredi prae<sup>6</sup> turbā occurrentium ad spec-  
tāculum nōn poterat, dōnec cōsul lictōrēs mīssisset quī  
submovendō circumfūsōs<sup>7</sup> iter ad praetōrium<sup>8</sup> facerent.  
Cōsurrēxit cōsul prōgressusque paulum introeuntī rēgī  
dextram porrēxit<sup>9</sup>, <sup>10</sup>submittentemque sē ad pedēs sustu-  
20 lit<sup>11</sup>; intrōductum in tabernāculum suō laterī adsidēre

1. An island in the Aegean Sea.

2. *latēns.*

3. *aliō tempore.*

4. *ātrā, nigrā.*

5. *indūtus, circumdatus.*

6. *ob, propter,* with acc.

7. Par. *eōs quī convēnerant.*

8. *the general's tent.*

9. *extendit.*

10. *and sinking down.*

11. *ēlevāvit, sc. eum.*

iussit<sup>1</sup>. Deinde eum interrogāvit quā inductus iniūriā bellum contrā populum Rōmānum tam infestō<sup>2</sup> animō suscēpisset? Cum rēx interrogātus, terram intuēns, diū tacitus flēret<sup>3</sup>, cōsul, "Bonum," inquit, "animum habē; populi Rōmāni clēmētia nōn modo spem tibi, sed prope 5 certam fidūciam<sup>4</sup> salutis praebet<sup>5</sup>."

1. sc. *eum*.

2. *inimicō*.

3. Par. *lacrimās effunderet*.

4. *cōnfidentiam*.

5. *dat*.

105. Paulus circumstantibus Rōmānis dē mūtātiōne rērum hūmānārum dicit et monet nē quis praesenti fortunāe crēdat.

Ita postquam Perseum cōsōlātus est Aemilius Paulus, 10 ad circumstantēs Rōmānōs conversus, "Exemplum insigne<sup>1</sup> cernitis," inquit, "mūtātiōnis rērum hūmānārum. Vōbis hōc praecipuē<sup>2</sup> dīcō, iuvenēs. Ideō in secundis<sup>3</sup> rēbus <sup>4</sup>nihil in quemquam superbē ac violenter cōsulere decet nec praesenti crēdere fortunāe, cum, quid vesper 15 ferat, incertum sit. Is dēmum<sup>5</sup> vir erit cūius animum neque prōspera fortunā nimis<sup>6</sup> efferet<sup>7</sup>, neque adversa infringet<sup>8</sup>." Eō diē et invitātus<sup>9</sup> ad cōsulem Perseus et <sup>10</sup>alius omnis eī honor habitus est qui habēri in tāli fortunā poterat. 20

1. *cōnspicuum*.

2. *māximē*.

3. *prōsperis*.

4. *it is becoming to resolve upon arrogant and violent measures against no one; lit. it is becoming to resolve upon nothing against any one proudly and violently.*

5. *quidem, profectō*.

6. *ultrā modum, ant. parum*.

7. The perf. part. *ēlātus* suggests what derivative?

8. *valdē franget, minuēt, dēbilītabit*.

9. sc. *est*.

10. *every other honor was shown him*.

106. Celebrat victōriam Paulus māgnis <sup>1</sup>lūdīs et epulīs.

Post victōriam cum ad cōsulem multārum gentium  
lēgātī grātulandī causā vēnissent, Aemilius Paulus lūdōs  
māgnō apparātū<sup>2</sup> fēcit et epulās quoque lēgātīs māgnā  
5 opulentiā et cūrā parāvit. Dicere solēbat et <sup>3</sup>convīvium  
instruere et lūdōs parāre virī<sup>4</sup> ēiusdem esse qui vincere  
bellō sciret<sup>5</sup>.

1. *with games and banquets.*2. *māgnificentiā.*3. Par. *epulās parāre.*4. Predicate gen. of posses-  
sion after *esse*.5. *knows how.*

## 107. Māgnificentissimus triumphus Paulī.

Cōnfectō bellō Aemilius Paulus rēgiā nāve ingentis  
10 māgnitudinis (nam sēdecim ōrdinēs rēmōrum<sup>1</sup> habuisse  
dicitur) ad urbem est subvectus. Fuit ēius triumphus  
omnium longē māgnificentissimus. Populus extrūctīs<sup>2</sup>  
per Forum tabulātīs<sup>3</sup> in modum theātrōrum spectāvit<sup>4</sup> in  
candidīs<sup>5</sup> togīs. Aperta<sup>6</sup> templa omnia et sertīs<sup>7</sup> corōnāta  
15 tūre<sup>8</sup> fūmābant. In trēs diēs distribūta est pompa<sup>9</sup> spec-  
tāculi. Primus diēs vix suffēcit trānsvehendis <sup>10</sup>signīs  
tabulisque; sequenti diē trānslāta sunt arma, galeae,  
scūta, lōricae, pharetrae, argentum aurumque. Tertiō  
diē primā statim lūce dūcere āgmen coepēre<sup>11</sup> tibicinēs<sup>12</sup>,  
20 nōn fēstōs sollemnium pompārum modōs sed bellicum

1. *oars.*2. *ēductīs, factīs.*3. *reviewing-stands.*4. sc. *spectāculum.*5. Ant. *nigrīs.*6. Ant *clausa.*7. *corōnīs flōrum.*8. *incense.*9. *parade.*10. *statues and pictures.*11. *incēpērunt.*12. *pipers.*



sonantēs, quasi in aciem prōcēdendum esset<sup>1</sup>. <sup>2</sup>Deinde agēbantur pīnguēs<sup>3</sup> cornibus aurātīs et vittīs<sup>4</sup> redimītī<sup>5</sup> bovēs centum vīgintī. Sequēbantur Perseī liberī, comitante ēducātōrum et magistrōrum turbā quī manūs<sup>6</sup> ad spectātōrēs cum lacrimīs miserābiliter tendēbant et <sup>7</sup>puerōs docēbant implōrandam suppliciter victōris populi misericordiam esse. Pōne<sup>8</sup> filiōs incēdēbat cum uxōre Perseus, attonitus<sup>9</sup> et subitō malō stupēns. Inde quadringentae corōnae aureae portābantur, ab omnibus ferē Graeciae cīvitatibus dōnō<sup>10</sup> missae. Postrēmō ipse in <sup>10</sup>currū Paulus aurō purpurāque fulgēns ēminēbat<sup>11</sup>, māgnam<sup>12</sup> cum<sup>13</sup> dignitate aliā corporis tum senectā ipsā māiestātem<sup>14</sup> prae sē ferēns. Post currum inter aliōs inlūstrēs virōs filiī duo Aemilī, deinde equitēs turmātīm<sup>15</sup> et cohortēs peditum, suis quaeque ōrdinibus. Paulō ā <sup>15</sup>senātū et populō Rōmānō concessum est ut <sup>16</sup>lūdis circēnsibus veste triumphālī ūterētur, eīque cōgnōmen Macedonici inditum<sup>17</sup>.

1. Impersonal.

2. Or. *Deinde centum vīgintī pīnguēs bovēs agēbantur cornibus aurātīs et vittīs redimītī.*

3. *sleek.*

4. *fillets.*

5. *corōnātī.*

6. Object of *tendēbant.*

7. Or. *docēbant puerōs misericordiam victōris populi suppliciter implōrandam esse.*

8. *post.*

9. *stunned.*

10. dat. for which.

11. *appārēbāt, exstābat, cōspi-cuus erat.*

12. With *māiestātem*, which is the object of *ferēns*.

13. *cum . . . tum = nōn solum . . . sed etiam.*

14. *showing.* See idioms.

15. *by squadrons.*

16. *at the contests in the Circus Maximus.*

17. *datum est.*

108. Gravī dolōre Paulus adfectus propter mortem duōrum filiōrum calamitātem summō animī rōbore sustinuit et dixit sē laetārī quod hīc privātus nōn pūblicus cāsus esset.

5 Tantae huic laetitiae gravis dolor admixtus est. Nam Aemilius Paulus, duōbus filiīs in adoptiōnem datīs, duōs tantum<sup>1</sup> nōminis hērēdēs domī retinuerat. Ex his minor, fermē duodecim annōs nātus, quīnque diēbus ante triumphum patris, māior autem trīduō post triumphum  
10 dēcessit. Itaque quī ad dōnandōs ūsque<sup>2</sup> liberōs abundāverat, in orbitāte<sup>3</sup> subitō dēstitūtus est. Eum tamen cāsū summō animī rōbore sustinuit, nec contigit<sup>4</sup> Perseō ut trīstem Paulum vidēret. Nam cum mōre māiōrum ōrātiōnem dē rēbus suis gestis apud populū habēret,  
15 "Cum in summā fēlicitāte nostrā," inquit, "timērem nē quid malī fortuna mōlirētur<sup>5</sup>, deōs immortalēs precātus sum<sup>6</sup> ut, si adversī<sup>7</sup> quid populō Rōmānō imminēret<sup>8</sup> ad expiandam nimiam<sup>9</sup> fēlicitātem, id in meam potius domum quam in rem pūblicam recideret<sup>10</sup>.<sup>11</sup> Quāpropter<sup>12</sup> bene  
20 habet. Adnuendō<sup>13</sup> enim vōtis nostrīs effēcērunt ut vōs potius meum cāsū dolērētis quam ego vestrō<sup>14</sup> ingemiscerem<sup>15</sup>. Nēmō iam ex tot liberīs superest quī Aemili Pauli

1. solum.

8. impendēret, instāret, ap-

2. Join with *ad* above, *ūsque* propinquāret.

ad = even to.

9. excessive.

3. privātiōne.

10. caderet.

4. evēnit.

11. Quam ob rem bene est.

5. parāret, cōgitāret.

12. See idioms.

6. implōrāvī.

13. adentiendō.

7. Partitive gen. after *quid*.14. sc. *cāsū*, abl. of cause.

15. dēplōrārem, lāmentārer.

nōmen ferat. Duōs enim in adoptiōnem datōs Cornēlia et Fabia gēns habent; Pauli in domō praeter<sup>1</sup> senem nēmō superest. Sed hanc privātam calamitātem vestra fēlicitās et secunda<sup>2</sup> fortūna pūblica cōnsōlātur.”

1. *except.*

2. *prōspera.*

109. Paulus omnēs Macedonum dīvitiās in aerārium populī Rōmānī intulit et pauper dēcessit. Fūnus ēius omnium benevolentīā insīgue fuit. 5

Aemilius Paulus omnī Macedonum gazā quae fuit māxima, potītus<sup>1</sup>, tantam in aerārium populī Rōmānī pecūniam invēxit ut ūnius imperātōris praeda finem adferret<sup>2</sup> tribū- 10 tōrum. At hīc nihil domum suam praeter sempiternam<sup>3</sup> nōminis memoriam dētulit. Mortuus est adeō pauper<sup>4</sup> ut dōs ēius uxōrī, nisi<sup>5</sup> vēnditō, quem ūnum reliquerat, fundō, nōn posset exsolvi<sup>6</sup>.<sup>7</sup> Exsequiae ēius nōn tam aurō et ebore cēterōque apparātū, quam omnium benevolentīā et 15 studiō<sup>8</sup> fuērunt insīgnēs. Macedoniae prīncipēs, qui tunc Rōmae erant lēgātī, <sup>9</sup>umerōs suōs fūnebrī lectō sponte suā subiēcērunt. Quem enim in bellō ob virtūtem timuerant, eundem in pāce ob iūstitiam diligēbant<sup>10</sup>.

1. This verb equals *in possessione habere*, and is followed by the abl.

2. *faceret.*

3. *aeternam.*

4. Or. *ut dōs ēius uxōrī nōn posset exsolvi nisi vēnditō fundō quem ūnum reliquerat.*

5. *vēnditō fundō = by selling the farm.*

6. *be paid.*

7. *pompā fūneris*, join *exsequiae* with *fuērunt insīgnēs*.

8. *amōre, favōre.*

9. *bore the funeral bier on their shoulders at their own request.*

10. *amābant.*

# SELECTIONS FROM AULUS GELLIUS.



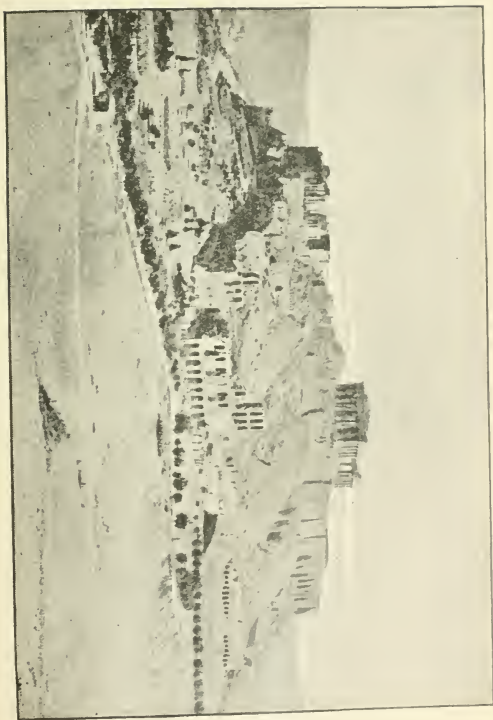
## I. LIFE OF AULUS GELLIUS.

All the information that we have about Gellius is contained in his well-known work, *Noctes Atticae*. In this he now and then makes incidental reference to himself and his activities, but nowhere gives any express or detailed account of his life. The date of his birth and of his death are equally uncertain, but we know from his references to his contemporaries that he must have lived from about 120 to 180 A.D. He was probably a Roman and of good family, and his education in grammar, rhetoric, and philosophy was of the very best. Among his teachers may be mentioned Sulpicius Apollinaris, the grammarian, a famous Carthaginian, who inspired him with a lasting interest in his art; Titus Castricius, the foremost rhetorician of his time; and Favorinus, the philosopher, once the favorite of the Emperor Hadrian, and distinguished for his learning and eloquence. Gellius was a lawyer by profession, but found time for much reading and study. Probably at the suggestion of Favorinus, he made a journey to Greece and traveled extensively in that country, remaining for a considerable time at Athens. It was there, in a country house near the city, during the long nights of winter, that he prepared his book. This suggested its title *Noctes Atticae*. No subsequent events of his life are known to us.

## II. NOCTES ATTICAE.

Gellius tells us in his preface that it was his habit when reading to make notes and extracts from the volume before him, and that these make up his book. It is, therefore, a note-book, containing the concentrated results of years of study. Of the twenty books of his work, all have come down to us excepting the eighth. There is no attempt made to classify the contents, but it is a miscellaneous

THE ACROPOLIS OF ATHENS.





collection of quotations, discussions, and dissertations on a great variety of subjects, mainly grammar, philosophy, history, and biography.

*Noctes Atticae* has a fourfold value :

*a.* As a story book. Gellius says that one object of his book was to entertain his children. It is therefore written in a popular vein, and contains but little that is abstruse or technical.

*b.* As a source of information. Gellius gives much interesting information on a great variety of subjects which, but for him, would never have been so clearly understood.

*c.* As giving quotations from authors no longer extant. It is in this respect that *Noctes Atticae* is peculiarly valuable.

*d.* As a biographer of prominent writers. In this field Gellius has done much, *e.g.*, nearly all we know about Plautus is from this source.

The style of *Noctes Atticae* is good in general, but it is marred by an affectation towards out-of-the-way and obsolete words and phrases. Gellius here is simply following the literary fashion of his day. It is this same love of the archaic that causes him to ignore the Roman writers that lived nearest to his own time. He scarcely mentions the writers of the Augustan age, but speaks in the highest terms of Plautus, Ennius, Cato, and other early writers, and quotes from them constantly.

## I, 14.

110. Quid dixerit feceritque C. Fabricius<sup>1</sup>, magnā vir glōriā magnisque rebus gestis, sed familiae<sup>2</sup> pecūniaeque inops, cum ei Samnitēs<sup>3</sup> tamquam<sup>4</sup> indigentī<sup>5</sup> grave aurum dōnārent.

5 Iūlius Hygīnus<sup>6</sup> in librō Dē Vitā Rēbusque Inlūstrium Virōrum sextō lēgātōs dicit ā Samnitibus ad C. Fabricium, imperātōrem populī Rōmānī, vēnisse et memorātis<sup>7</sup> multis magnisque rebus, quae bene ac benevolē, post redditam pācem Samnitibus, fecisset, obtulisse dōnō grandem pecūniam orāsseque uti acciperet ūtereturque, atque id  
10 facere Samnitēs dixisse, quod vidērent multa ad splendōrem domūs atque victūs<sup>8</sup> dēfieri<sup>9</sup> neque prō<sup>10</sup> amplitūdine dignitāteque lautum<sup>11</sup> parātum<sup>12</sup> esse. Tum Fabricium  
15 plānās manūs ab auribus ad oculōs et infrā<sup>14</sup> deinceps ad nārēs et ad ōs et ad gulam atque inde porrō ad ventrem imum dēdūxisse et lēgātis ita respondisse: dum illis

N.B. The notes on these selections contain occasional questions on word-formation. It is taken for granted that students have followed the suggestion made in the Introduction (III, A, b) before reaching this point.

1. A typical Roman of the old style, famous for his integrity. He was three times consul.

2. *reī familiāris, property.*

3. The people of Samnium.

4. *velutī, sicut, quasi.*

5. Par. *māgnūm aurī pondus.*

6. A freedman of Augustus by whom he was placed in charge of the Palatine library. He wrote many books, all of which are lost.

7. *nārrātis.*

8. *vīctus* includes all that has to do with the manner of living.

9. *dēfici, deesse.*

10. *in proportiōe to.*

11. *ēlegantem, sūmptuōsum.*

12. *apparātum = furnishing, outfit.*

13. *palms.*

14. Ant. *suprā.*



omnibus membrīs, quae attigisset, obsistere atque imperāre posset, numquam quicquam dēfutūrum; propterea<sup>1</sup> sē pecūniam, <sup>2</sup>quā nihil<sup>3</sup> sibi esset ūsus, ab hīs quibus eam scīret ūsuī esse, nōn accipere.

1. *quam ob rem.* which takes the ablative; A. &
2. With *ūsus*, signifying *need*, G. 243, *e*; H. 414, IV.
3. acc. of spec.

## I, 17.

111. Quantā cum animī aequitāte tolerāverit Sōcratēs 5  
uxōris ingenium intractābile; <sup>1</sup>atque inibi, quid M. Varrō<sup>2</sup>  
in quādā saturā dē officiō marītī<sup>3</sup> scripserit.

Xanthippē, Sōcratis philosophī uxor, mōrōsa admodum<sup>4</sup> fuisse fertur et iūrgiōsa<sup>5</sup>, irārumque et molestiārum muliebrium per diem perque noctem scatēbat<sup>6</sup>. <sup>7</sup>Hās ēius 10  
intēperiēs in maritum Alcibiadēs dēmīrātus, interrogāvit Sōcratēn quaenam ratiō esset cur mulierem tam acerbam domō nōn exigeret<sup>8</sup>. "Quoniam," inquit Sōcratēs, "cum illam domī tālem perpetior<sup>9</sup>, insuēscō et exerceor<sup>10</sup> ut cēterōrum quoque forīs<sup>11</sup> petulantiam et iniūriam facilius 15  
feram."

1. *and in this connection.*
2. M. Terentius Varro, the famous Roman antiquarian, born 116 B.C., whose profound and varied learning earned for him the title of the "most learned of the Romans." He wrote four hundred and ninety books, but of these only two works have come down to us, one in a mutilated form.
3. *coniugis, viri.*
4. *valdē, vehementer.*
5. cf. *iūrgium* = a quarrel.
6. *overflowed with, was full of.*
7. *Alcibiades, wondering at these outbreaks of hers against her husband.*
8. *expelleret, ēiceret.*
9. *perferō, tolerō.*
10. *exerceor* = *exerceō mē.*
11. *forīs*, adv. = *out of doors.*

<sup>1</sup>Secundum hanc sententiam quoque Varrō in saturā Menippeā, quam dē officiō maritī scripsit: "Vitium," inquit, "uxōris aut <sup>2</sup>tollendum aut ferendum est. Qui tollit vitium<sup>3</sup>, uxōrem commodiōrem<sup>4</sup> praestat<sup>5</sup>; quī fert, <sup>5</sup>sēsē meliōrem facit." Haec verba Varrōnis 'tollere' et 'ferre' lepidē<sup>6</sup> quidem composita sunt, sed 'tollere' appāret dictum prō 'corrīgere.' Id etiam appāret, ēiusmodi vitium uxōris, si corrīgī nōn possit, ferendum esse Varrōnem cēnsuisse<sup>7</sup>, quod ferrī scilicet ā virō honestē potest; <sup>10</sup><sup>8</sup>vitia enim flāgitiīs leviōra sunt.

1. Par. ex hāc sententiā.

2. cured or endured.

3. culpam.

4. faciliōrem, moderātiōrem.

5. facit.

6. eleganter, aptē.

7. putāvisse.

8. for defects are easier to endure (leviōra) than shameful disgraces (flāgitiīs).

### I, 19.

#### 112. Historia super librīs Sibyllinīs<sup>1</sup> āc dē Tarquiniō Superbō rēge.

In antiquīs annālibus<sup>2</sup> memoria super librīs Sibyllinīs haec prōdita<sup>3</sup> est: Anus<sup>4</sup> hospita atque incōgnita ad Tar- <sup>15</sup>quinium Superbum rēgem adiit, novem librōs ferēns, quōs esse dicēbat divīna ōrācula; eōs sē velle <sup>5</sup>vēnum

1. These were prophecies probably derived from Cumae, a Greek city of Campania. They were written in Greek verse and kept in a stone chest in the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. In 82 B.C. they were destroyed by fire, but again restored. Finally they were removed by Augustus, and placed

in golden chests in the temple of Apollo on the Palatine.

2. The oldest historical records among the Romans were called *annālēs librī* = *year books*; they were written on whitened boards.

3. *nārrāta, scrīpta.*

4. *an old woman.*

5. *to sell.*

dare. Tarquinius pretium percontātus est<sup>1</sup>. Mulier<sup>2</sup> nimium atque immēsum popōscit: rēx, quasi<sup>3</sup> anus aetāte dēsiperet, dērisit. Tum illa foculum<sup>4</sup> cōram cum ignī appōnit, trēs librōs ex novem deūrīt<sup>5</sup> et, ecquid<sup>6</sup> reliquōs sex eōdem pretiō emere vellet, rēgem interrogā- 5  
vit. Sed enim<sup>7</sup> Tarquinius id multō risit magis dixitque anum iam procul<sup>8</sup> dubiō dēlirāre<sup>9</sup>. Mulier ibidem statim trēs aliōs librōs exussit<sup>10</sup> atque id ipsum dēnuō<sup>11</sup> placidē rogat, ut trēs reliquōs eōdem illō pretiō emat. Tarquinius ōre iam sēriō atque attentiōre animō fit, eam cōstantiam 10  
cōfidentiamque<sup>12</sup> nōn insuper habendam intellegit; librōs trēs reliquōs mercātur nihilō minōre pretiō quam quod erat petitum prō omnibus. <sup>13</sup>Sed eam mulierem tunc ā Tarquiniō digressam postea<sup>14</sup> nūsquam locī visam cōstitit. Libri trēs, in sacrārium conditi, 'Sibyllinī' appellāti. Ad 15  
eōs, quasi ad ōrāculum, Quīndecim virī adeunt, cum dī immortalēs pūblicē cōsulendī sunt.

1. *diligenter quaesivit.*  
2. sc. *pretium*, tr. *the woman asked an excessive and in fact (atque) enormous price.*

3. *tamquam*, cf. p. 108, l. 3.

4. *brazier.*

5. *cremat, incendit.*

6. *num.*

7. *profectō, quidem.*

8. *sine.*

9. *insānīre.*

10. cf. *deūrīt* above.

11. *dē novō.*

12. *nōn neglegendam, nōn dēspiciendam.*

13. *Sed eam mulierem . . . cōstitit.* Note the emphatic order. Tr. *But as for that woman it is agreed, etc.*

14. Par. *nūllō locō.* *locī* is partitive genitive with *nūsquam*.

## I, 23.

113. Quis fuerit Papīrius Praetextātus; quae istius causa cōgnōmentī sit; historiaque ista omnis super eōdem Papīriō cōgnitū<sup>1</sup> iūcunda.

Historia dē Papīriō Praetextātō dicta scriptaque est  
 5 ā M. Catōne<sup>2</sup> in orātiōne quā ūsus est ad militēs contrā  
 Galbam<sup>3</sup>, cum multā quidem venustāte atque lūce atque  
 munditiā<sup>4</sup> verbōrum. <sup>5</sup>Ea Catōnis verba huic prōrsus  
 commentāriō indidissem, sī librī cōpia fuisset id temporis  
 cum haec dictāvī. Quod sī nōn virtūtēs dignitātēque  
 10 verbōrum, sed rem ipsam scīre quaeris, rēs fermē ad  
 hunc modum est: Mōs antea senātōribus Rōmae fuit  
 in cūriam cum praetextātis<sup>6</sup> filiis introire. Tum, cum in  
 senātū rēs māior quaepiam<sup>7</sup> cōsultāta eaque in diem po-  
 sterum prōlāta<sup>8</sup> est, <sup>9</sup>placuitque ut eam rem, super quā  
 15 tractāvissent, nē quis ēnūntiāret priusquam dēcrēta esset,  
 māter Papīri puerī, quī cum parente suō in cūriā fuerat,  
 percontāta est<sup>10</sup> filium quidnam in senātū patrēs ēgissent.

1. Supine depending on *iūcunda*.

2. See introduction to selections 88–100.

3. Servius Sulpicius Galba was praetor 151 B.C., and received Spain as his province. He was tried for cruelty to the Lusitanians, and was denounced in the strongest terms by Cato, who was then eighty-five years old.

4. *ēlegantia*.

5. *These words of Cato I should have inserted right in this note-book, if I had had access to the book at just the time when I dictated them.*

6. *wearing the praetexta*, i.e. the toga with a purple border worn by children.

7. *aliqua*.

8. *prōrogāta*.

9. Or. *placuitque (ut) nē quis ēnūntiāret eam rem super (= dē) quā tractāvissent.*

10. cf. p. 111, l. 1.

Puer respondit tacendum esse neque id dici licere. Mulier fit audiendi cupidior; sēcrētum<sup>1</sup> rei et silentium pueri animum eius ad inquirendum ēverberat<sup>2</sup>: quaerit igitur compressius<sup>3</sup> violentiusque. Tum puer mātrem urgente<sup>4</sup> lepidi atque fēstivi mendāci cōnsilium capit. 5  
 Actum<sup>5</sup> in senātū dixit utrum<sup>6</sup> vidērētur ūtilius<sup>7</sup> exque rē pūblicā esse, <sup>8</sup>ūnusne ut duās uxōrēs habēret, an ut ūna apud duōs nūpta esset. Hōc illa ubi audivit, animus compavēscit<sup>9</sup>, domō trepidāns ēgreditur, ad cēterās mātrōnās [adfert<sup>10</sup>]. Pervenit ad senātum postridiē 10  
 mātrum familiās caterva<sup>11</sup>. Lacrimantēs atque obsecrantēs ōrant <sup>12</sup>ūna potius ut duōbus<sup>13</sup> nūpta fieret quam ut ūni<sup>13</sup> duae. Senātōrēs ingredientēs in cūriam, quae illa mulierum intemperies et quid <sup>14</sup>sibi postulātiō istaec vellet, mirābantur. Puer Papīrius in medium cūriae prō- 15  
 gressus, <sup>15</sup>quid māter audire institisset<sup>16</sup>, quid ipse mātri dixisset, rem, sicut fuerat, dēnārrat. Senātus fidem atque ingenium pueri exōsculatur<sup>17</sup>, cōnsultum facit <sup>18</sup>utī posthāc pueri cum patribus in cūriam nē introeant, praeter<sup>19</sup>

1. *mystery.*2. *stimulat, urges.*3. *vehementius.*4. *neat and humorous.*5. *sc. esse.*6. *which (of two).*

7. See idioms.

8. *whether that one should have . . .*9. *timet, metuit.*10. *carries the news.*11. *multitūdō.*12. Or. *ut ūna potius duōbus,*  
etc.13. The verb *nūbere, to marry,* regularly governs the dative.14. *sibi . . . vellet, lit. wished for itself = meant.*15. The *quid* clauses are in apposition with *rem*, the object of *dēnārrat*.16. From *īnsistō*, cf. Eng. *insist*.17. *valdē laudat.*18. *utī . . . nē = nē*, cf. p. 112, n. 9, above.19. Adv. = *except*.

ille ūnus Papirius, atque puerō posteā cōgnōmentum honōris grātiā inditum<sup>1</sup> 'Praetextātus' ob tacendi loquendique in aetāte praetextae prūdentiam.

1. *impositum.*

I, 24.

114. Tria epigrammata trium veterum poētārum, Naevī<sup>1</sup>,  
5 Plautī<sup>2</sup>, Pācuvī<sup>3</sup>, quae facta ab ipsīs sepulcrīs<sup>4</sup> eōrum incīsa sunt.

Trium poētārum inlustrium epigrammata, Cn. Naevī, Plauti, M. Pācuvī, quae ipsi fēcērunt et incidenda sepulcrō suō reliquērunt, <sup>5</sup>nōbilitātis eōrum grātiā et venustātis  
10 scribenda in hīs commentāriīs esse dūxī.

Epigramma Naevī plēnum superbiae Campānae<sup>6</sup>, quod testimōnium esse iūstum potuisset, nisi ab ipsō dictum esset :

15 Immortālēs mortālēs sī foret fās flēre,  
Flērent dīvae Camēnae<sup>7</sup> Naevium poētā.

1. Cn. Naevius, 270–204 B.C., a famous epic and dramatic poet. Of his epic poem on the First Punic War a few fragments still remain. It was extensively copied by later writers, especially by Vergil. His plays were very popular even in the Augustan age.

2. T. Maccius Plautus, born about 254 B.C., was the most celebrated comic poet of Rome. We still possess twenty of his plays.

3. M. Pacuvius, one of the early Roman tragedians, was born about 220 B.C. He was equally famous as a painter and as a writer. A few fragments of his plays are extant.

4. dat. after *incīsa*.

5. Or. *dūxī* (= *habuī*) *scribenda esse in hīs commentāriīs nōbilitātis eōrum grātiā* (= *on account of*) *et venustātis*.

6. *Campanian*. Naevius was born there.

7. *Mūsae*.

Itaque <sup>1</sup>postquam est Orchī trāditus thēsaurō,  
Oblītī sunt Rōmae loquier<sup>2</sup> linguā Latīnā.<sup>3</sup>

Epigramma Plautī, quod dubitāssēmus an<sup>4</sup> Plauti foret,  
nisi ā M. Varrōne<sup>5</sup> positum esset in librō Dē Poētis  
primō :

5

<sup>6</sup>Postquam est mortem aptus Plautus, Cōmoedia lūget<sup>7</sup>,  
Scaena est dēserta, dein Rīsus, Lūdus Iocusque,  
Et <sup>8</sup>Numerī innumerī simul omnēs conlacrimāunt.

Epigramma Pācuvī verēcundissimum<sup>9</sup> et pūrissimum  
dignumque ēius ēlegantissimā gravitāte :

10

Adulēscēns, tametsī properās, tē hōc saxum rogat  
Vt sēsē aspiciās, deinde quod scrīptum est legās.  
Hīc sunt poētae Pācuvī Marcī sita  
Ossa. Hōc<sup>10</sup> volēbam nescius nē essēs. Valē.

1. Par. *postquam Plūtōnis domum abiit.*

2. Old form for *loquī* = *how to speak.*

3. Note the meter of this epigram, as also of the third. It is known as the saturnian, a native Italian meter antedating the hexameter.

4. *num, sī.*

5. See 111, n. 2.

6. Par. *Postquam Plautus mortuus est.*

7. Ant. *gaudet.*

8. *Measure: without number.*

9. *modestissimum: ant. impudentissimum.*

10. The object of *nescius essēs*, which equals *nescirēs.*

## II, 1.

115. Quō genere solitus sit philosophus Sōcratēs exercēre <sup>1</sup>patientiam corporis ; dēque ēiusdem virī temperantiā. 15

Inter labōrēs voluntāriōs et exercitia <sup>2</sup>corporis <sup>3</sup>ad fortuitās patientiae vicēs firmandī, id quoque accēpimus

1. *physical endurance.*

2. *corporis firmandī*, objective

3. *for unexpected duties requiring*

*endurance.*

genitive.

- Sōcratēn facere insuēvisse<sup>1</sup>: stāre solitus Sōcratēs dicitur pertināci statū, <sup>2</sup>perdius atque pernox, <sup>3</sup>ā summō lūcis ortū ad sōlem alterum orientem, incōnīvēns<sup>4</sup>, immōbilis, eisdem in vestigiis, et ōre atque oculis eundem in locum  
 5 dīrēctis, cōgitābundus<sup>5</sup>, tamquam quōdam sēcessū<sup>6</sup> mentis atque animi factō ā corpore. Quam rem cum Favōrīnus<sup>7</sup>, dē fortitudīne ēius virī <sup>8</sup>ut plēraque disserēns, attigisset<sup>9</sup>, <sup>10</sup>‘πολλάκις’ inquit ‘ἐξ ἡλίου εἰς ἡλιον εἰστήκει ἀστραβέστερος τῶν πρέμνων’.
- 10 Temperantiā quoque fuisse eum tantā trāditum est ut omnia ferē vitae suae tempora <sup>11</sup>valētūdine inoffēnsā vīxerit. In illius etiam pestilentiae vāstitāte quae in bellī Peloponnēnsiacī pīncipiō Athēniēnsium civitātem internecivō<sup>12</sup> genere morbī dēpopulāta est, is <sup>13</sup>parcendī moderandīque ratiōnibus dicitur <sup>14</sup>et ā voluptātum lābe cāvisse et salūbritātēs<sup>15</sup> corporis retinuisse, ut nēquāquam<sup>16</sup> fuerit  
 15 commūni omnium clādi obnoxius<sup>17</sup>.

1. *solitum esse.*

2. Par. *per diem atque per noctem.*

3. Par. *ā primā lūce. summō = primō.*

4. *sine somnō, vigil.*

5. *cōgitāns, dēliberābundus.*

6. *discessū.*

7. A famous philosopher and sophist of the reign of Hadrian.

8. *discussing in his usual vein.*

9. *commemorāasset, tractāset.*

10. *often he stood, stiffer than the trees, from sun to sun.*

11. *sine morbō, sānus.*

12. *gravī, fūnestō.*

13. *by means of care and self-restraint.*

14. *both to have secured himself against the ruinous effect of sensual pleasures.*

15. *sānitātem, bonam valētūdinem.*

16. *minimē.*

17. *expositus, subiectus.*



## II, 28.

116. Nōn esse compertum<sup>1</sup> cui deō<sup>2</sup> rem dīvinam fieri oporteat, cum terra movet.

Quaenam esse causa videātur quam ob rem terrae tremōrēs fiant, <sup>3</sup>nōn modo his commūnibus hominum sēnsibus opiniōnibusque compertum<sup>4</sup>, sed nē inter physicās 5 quidem philosophiās <sup>5</sup>satis cōstitit ventōrumne vī accidant specūs<sup>6</sup> hiātūsque<sup>7</sup> terrae subeuntium an aquārum subter in terrārum cavīs undantium pulsibus fluctibusque, ita utī videntur existimāsse antiquissimī Graecōrum, qui Neptūnum <sup>8</sup>σεισίχθονα<sup>8</sup> appellāvērunt, an cūius<sup>9</sup> aliae<sup>10</sup> rei <sup>10</sup>causā alteriusve<sup>11</sup> deī vī ac nūmine, nōndum etiam, sicuti dīximus, prō certō crēditum. Propterea veterēs Rōmāni, cum<sup>12</sup> in omnibus aliis vitae officiīs, tum in cōstituendis religiōnibus atque in dis immortalibus animadvertendis castissimī<sup>13</sup> cautissimīque; ubi terram mōvisse sēserant <sup>15</sup>nūntiātumve erat, fēriās<sup>14</sup> ēius rei causā ēdictō<sup>15</sup> imperābant, sed deī nōmen, ita utī solet, cui servārī fēriās oportēret, statuere et ēdicere quiēscēbant<sup>16</sup>, nē, alium prō aliō nōminandō, falsā religiōne populum adligārent<sup>17</sup>. Eās

1. cōgnitum, intellēctum.

2. sacrum, sacrificium.

3. Remember that when *nōn modo* is followed by *sed nē . . . quidem*, the English idiom requires a second negative in the first clause.

4. sc. est.

5. See idioms.

6. cavernās, antra.

7. clefts, chasms.

8. earth-shaker.

9. The indefinite = some.

10. aliūs.

11. aliūs.

12. cum . . . tum = not only . . . but especially.

13. piissimī.

14. holidays.

15. abl. of means.

16. they refrained from.

17. Ant. solverent.

fēriās sī quis polluisset<sup>1</sup> piāculōque<sup>2</sup> ob hanc rem opus  
esset, hostiam<sup>3</sup> ' sī deō, sī deae ' immolābant, idque ita ex  
dēcrētō pontificum observātum esse M. Varrō<sup>4</sup> dicit, quo  
niam et quā vī et per quem deōrum deārumve terra tre  
5 meret incertum esset.

Sed dē lūnae sōlisque dēfectiōnibus<sup>5</sup>, nōn minus in  
ēius rei causā reperiendā sēsē exercuerunt. Quippe<sup>6</sup>  
M. Catō<sup>7</sup>, vir in cōgnōscendis rēbus multī studi<sup>8</sup>, incertē  
tamen et incūriōsē<sup>9</sup> super eā rē opinātus est. Verba Catō-  
10 nis ex Origenum quartō<sup>10</sup> haec sunt: "11Nōn libet scribere  
quod 12in tabulā āpud pontificem māximum est, quotiēns  
annōna<sup>13</sup> cāra fuerit, quotiēns lūnae aut sōlis lūminī cālī-  
gō<sup>14</sup> aut quid obstiterit." Ūsque adeō parvī fēcit ratiōnēs  
vērās sōlis et lūnae dēficientium vel scire vel dicere.

1. *contāmināssset.*2. abl. after *opus* = *need*, cf.*ūsus*, p. 109, l. 3.3. *vīctimam.*

4. See 111, n. 2.

5. *eclīpsēs.*6. *nam.*

7. See pp. 88-97.

8. Descriptive genitive with  
*vir.*9. *indifferently.*10. sc. *librō.*11. *I am not disposed.*12. This refers to the record  
of events kept at the house of  
the high priest.13. *provisions.*14. *mist.*

## III, 4.

117. <sup>1</sup>Quod P. Āfricānō et aliīs tunc virīs nōbilibus ante  
<sup>2</sup>aetātem senectam barbam et genās<sup>3</sup> rādere mōs patrius  
 fuit.

In libris quōs dē vitā P. Scīpiōnis Āfricāni composītōs  
 legimus, scriptum esse animadvertimus, P. Scīpiōni<sup>4</sup> Pauli 5  
 filiō, postquam dē Poenis triumphāverat cēnsorque fuerat,  
<sup>5</sup>diem dictum esse ad<sup>6</sup> populum ā Claudiō Asellō, tribūnō  
 plēbis, cui<sup>7</sup> equum in cēnsūrā adēmerat, eumque, cum  
 esset reus<sup>8</sup>, neque barbam dēsisse<sup>9</sup> rādī neque nōn can-  
 didā veste ūtī neque fuisse cultū<sup>10</sup> solitō reōrum. Sed 10  
 cum in eō tempore Scīpiōnem minōrem quadrāgintā  
 annōrum fuisse cōnstāret, quod dē barbā rāsā ita scriptum  
 esset mirābāmur. Comperimus autem cēterōs quoque in  
 eīsdem temporibus nōbilēs virōs barbam <sup>11</sup>in ēiusmodi  
 aetāte rāsītāvissē<sup>12</sup>, idcircōque plērāsque imāginēs vete- 15  
 rum, nōn admodum senum, sed in mediō aetātis, ita  
 factās vidēmus.

1. The Romans in early times wore the beard long. Barbers were introduced 300 B.C., and Pliny says that Scipio Africanus Major was the first Roman who was shaved every day. The custom soon became general. In times of mourning or trouble the beard was allowed to grow.

2. *aetātem senectam = senectūtem.*

3. *cheeks.*

4. Indirect object of *dictum esse*,

5. See idioms.

6. *apud.*

7. See Introduction IV, 16, 3, *c.*

8. *a defendant, under arrest.*

9. From *dēsino*, cf. *cessāre, fīnem facere.*

10. *cultus = vestītus et ōrnāmentum corporis.*

11. *at this age, i.e. at about forty.*

12. Frequentative of *rādō*, post-Augustan and very rare.

## III, 8.

118. Litterae eximiae<sup>1</sup> cōsulum C. Fabricī<sup>2</sup> et Q. Aemilī ad rēgem Pyrrhum<sup>3</sup> ā Q. Claudiō<sup>4</sup> scriptōre historiārum in memoriam datae.

Cum Pyrrhus rēx in terrā Ītaliā esset et <sup>5</sup>ūnam atque alteram pūgnās prōsperē pūgnāset <sup>6</sup>satisque agerent Rōmānī et <sup>7</sup>plēraque Ītalia ad rēgem dēscivisset<sup>8</sup>, tum Ambraciēnsis<sup>9</sup> quispiam Timocharēs, rēgis Pyrrhī amicus, ad C. Fabricium cōsulem fūrtim vēnit āc praemium petīvit et, si dē praemiō conveniret<sup>10</sup>, prōmīsit rēgem venēnis <sup>10</sup>necāre, idque facile esse factū dixit, quoniam filius suos pōcula in conviviō rēgī ministrāret. Eam rem Fabricius ad senātum scripsit. Senātus ad rēgem lēgātōs mīsīt mandāvitque<sup>11</sup> ut dē Timochare nihil prōderent, sed <sup>15</sup>monērent utī rēx circumspectius ageret atque ā proximōrum insidiīs salūtem tūtārētur.<sup>12</sup> Hōc ita, utī diximus, in <sup>13</sup>Valerī Antiātis historiā scriptum est. Quadrigārius autem in librō tertiō nōn Timocharem, sed Nīciam adisse

1. *ēgregiae*.

2. See selection 110, n. 1. This consulship was in 278 B.C.

3. The brave and noble king of Epirus who crossed into Italy and fought against the Romans, 280-274 B.C.

4. Q. Claudius Quadrigarius, 100-78 B.C., wrote a history of Rome. Gellius seems to have thought more of him as a historian than other writers.

5. See idioms.

6. *had all they could do*.

7. *māxima pars Ītaliae*.

8. *dēfēcisset*, cf. Eng. *defection*.

9. Ambracia is a town in Epirus. What does the ending *-ēnsis* denote?

10. *if an agreement were made*.

11. *imperāvīt*.

12. *dēfenderet*.

13. Q. Valerius Antias flourished about 80 B.C. Livy calls him the most mendacious of all the annalists.

ad cōnsulem scripsit, <sup>1</sup>neque lēgātōs ā senātū missōs sed ā cōsulibus, et Pyrrhum populō Rōmānō laudēs atque grātiās scripsisse captivōsque omnēs quōs tum habuit, vestivisse et reddidisse.

Cōsulēs tum fuērunt C. Fabricius et Q. Aemilius. 5  
Litterās quās ad rēgem Pyrrhum super eā causā misērunt, Claudius Quadrīgārius scripsit fuisse hōc exemplō<sup>2</sup>:

“Cōsulēs Rōmānī <sup>3</sup>salūtem dicunt Pyrrhō rēgī. Nōs prō tuīs iniūriīs continuis <sup>4</sup>animō tenus commōtī inimiciter tēcum bellāre<sup>5</sup> studēmus. Sed commūnis exemplī 10  
et fideī ergō<sup>6</sup> vīsum<sup>7</sup> ut tē salvum velimus, <sup>8</sup>ut esset quem armīs vincere possēmus. Ad nōs vēnit Niciās, familiāris tuus, quī sibi praemium ā nōbīs peteret, sī tē clam interfēcisset<sup>9</sup>. Id nōs negāvimus velle, nēve<sup>10</sup> ob eam rem quicquam commodi exspectāret, et simul<sup>11</sup> vīsum 15  
est ut tē <sup>12</sup>certiōrem facerēmus, nē quid<sup>13</sup> ēiusmodī, sī accidisset, nostrō cōsiliō civitātēs putārent factum, et quod nōbīs nōn placet pretiō aut praemiō aut dolis pūgnāre. Tū, nisi cavēs, iacēbis<sup>14</sup>.”

1. Or. *et lēgātōs missōs (esse)*  
*nōn ā senātū sed ā cōsulibus.*

2. *sententiā.*

3. See idioms.

4. *moved to the heart. tenus*  
always follows its case.

5. Par. *bellum gerere.*

6. *causā.*

7. sc. *est, it has seemed right.*

8. *that there might be one.*

9. What tense in direct discourse?

10. *neve = et nē. nē . . . exspectāret = nōlī exspectāre* of direct discourse.

11. *eōdem tempore.*

12. See idioms.

13. Subject of *factum (esse).*

14. Par. *mortuus eris.*

## III, 15.

119. <sup>1</sup>Exstāre in litterīs perque hominum memoriās trādītum<sup>2</sup> quod repente multīs mortem attulit gaudium<sup>3</sup> ingēns inspērātum, <sup>4</sup>interclūsā animā et vim māgnī novīque mōtūs nōn sustinente.

5 Cōgnitō repente inspērātō gaudiō expirāsse animam<sup>5</sup> refert Aristotelēs<sup>6</sup> philosophus Polycritam, nōbilem fēminam <sup>7</sup>Naxō insulā. Philippidēs<sup>8</sup> quoque, cōmoediārum poēta haud ignōbilis, <sup>9</sup>aetāte iam ēditā, cum in certāmine poētārum praeter spem vicisset et laetissimē gauderet,   
 10 inter illud gaudium repente mortuus est. Dē Rhodiō etiam Diagorā celebrāta historia est. Is Diagorās trēs filiōs adulēscentēs habuit, ūnum pugilem<sup>10</sup>, alterum pancratiastē<sup>11</sup>, tertium luctātōrem<sup>12</sup>. Eōs omnīs vidit vincere corōnāri<sup>13</sup>que Olympiae<sup>13</sup> eōdem diē et, cum ibi eum trēs   
 15 adulēscentēs amplexī corōnis suis in caput patris positīs sāviārentur<sup>14</sup>, cum populus grātulābundus<sup>15</sup> flōrēs undique

1. *That there appears in documents and has been handed down by the traditions of men the story that.*

2. *sc. esse.*

3. *The subject.*

4. *since their breath was stifled.*

5. *Object of expirāsse.*

6. *The learned and distinguished philosopher, born 384 B.C.*

7. *Locative ablative.*

8. *A prominent writer of the New Comedy. He flourished about 323 B.C.*

9. *Par. in senectūte.*

10. *boxer.*

11. *The pancratium was an athletic contest combining the best arts of wrestling and boxing. One engaging in such a contest might be called an 'all-round athlete.'*

12. *wrestler.*

13. *The famous spot in Elis where the Olympic games were held.*

14. *ōsculārentur.*

15. *What is the force of the suffix -bundus?*

in eum iaceret, ibidem in stadiō<sup>1</sup>, inspectante populō, in  
ōsculis atque in manibus filiōrum, <sup>2</sup>animam efflāvit.

Praetereā in nostris annālibus scriptum lēgimus, <sup>3</sup>quā  
tempestāte apud Cannās<sup>4</sup> exercitus populī Rōmānī caesus  
est, anum<sup>5</sup> mātrem nūntiō dē morte filiī adlāto, lūctū atque 5  
maerōre adfectam esse; sed is nūntius nōn vērus fuit atque  
is adulēscēns nōn diū post ex eā pūgnā in urbem rediit;  
anus, repente filiō visō, cōpiā atque turbā <sup>6</sup>et quasi ruīnā  
incidentis inopinātī<sup>7</sup> gaudi oppressa exanimātaque est.

1. *stadium est locus in quō  
āthlētae certābant.*

2. *Par. mortuus est.*

3. *Par. illō tempore quō.*

4. Cannae, the little town in  
Apulia near which Hannibal

completely crushed a great Ro-  
man army, 216 B.C.

5. See p. 110, l. 14.

6. *and, as it were, storm.*

7. *imprōvisī, subitī.*

#### IV, 8.

120. **Quid C. Fabricius<sup>1</sup> dē Cornēliō Rūfinō<sup>2</sup> homine avārō 10**  
**dīxerit, quem, cum ōdisset inimīcusque esset, dēsignan-**  
**dum<sup>3</sup> tamen cōsulem cūrāvit.**

Fabricius Luscinus māgnā glōriā vir māgnisque rēbus  
gestis fuit. P. Cornēlius Rūfinus manū quidem<sup>4</sup> strēnuus  
et bellātor bonus militārisque disciplinae <sup>5</sup>peritus admo- 15  
dum fuit, sed fūrāx<sup>6</sup> homō et avāritiā ācrī erat. Hunc  
Fabricius nōn probābat neque <sup>7</sup>amicō utēbātur <sup>8</sup>ōsusque

1. See selection 110, n. 1.

2. Consul in 290 and 277 B.C.

3. *creandum*. The gerundive  
agreeing with the object is used  
with *cūrō* to express purpose.

4. See Introduction, III, C, j.

5. *peritus admodum = peritis-*  
*simus.*

6. *fūr = a thief*. What is the  
force of the suffix *-āx*?

7. See idioms.

8. *ōsus . . . fuit = ōderat.*

eum mōrum causā fuit. Sed cum in temporibus rei<sup>1</sup> difficillimis cōsulēs creandī forent<sup>2</sup> et is Rūfinus peteret cōsulātum competitōresque ēius essent imbellēs quīdam et futtilēs<sup>3</sup>, summā ope<sup>4</sup> adnīxus est Fabricius utī Rūfinō cōsulātus dēferrētur. Eam rem plērisque admīrantibus, quod hominem avārum cui esset inimicissimus, creārī cōsulem peteret, "Mālō," inquit, "civis mē compilet<sup>5</sup>, quam hostis vēndat."

<sup>6</sup>Hunc Rūfinum posteā bis cōsulātū et dictātūrā fūctum<sup>7</sup> cēnsor Fabricius senātū mōvit <sup>8</sup>ob lūxuriae notam, quod decem pondō<sup>9</sup> librās <sup>10</sup>argentī factī habēret. Id autem, quod suprā scrīpsī, Fabricium dē Cornēliō Rūfinō ita, utī in plērāque historiā scrīptum est, dīxisse, M. Cicerō nōn aliis ā Fabriciō, sed ipsī Rūfinō, <sup>11</sup>grātiās agentī quod ope ēius dēsīgnātus esset<sup>12</sup>, dictum esse refert<sup>13</sup> in librō secundō Dē Orātōre.

1. sc. *pūblīcae*.2. *essent*.3. *vānī, levēs*.4. *potentiā*.5. *rob.* sc. *ut*; so, too, with *vēndat*.6. Or. *Fabricius cēnsor posteā mōvit hunc Rūfinum, bis fūctum cōsulātū et dictātūrā, senātū ob,* etc.7. *performed the duties of*.8. *as a reproach for high living.*9. *in weight*.10. *argentī factī* = *silver plate*.

11. See idioms.

12. cf. p. 123, l. 11.

13. *nārrat*, subject is *Cicero*.

## V, 2.

121. Super<sup>1</sup> equō Alexandrī rēgis, quī Būcephalās appellātus est.

Equus Alexandrī rēgis et capite et nōmine 'Būcephala-

1. *dē*.



lās<sup>1</sup> ' fuit. Ēmptum<sup>2</sup> Charēs<sup>3</sup> scripsit talentis<sup>4</sup> tredecim et rēgī Philippō<sup>5</sup> dōnātum<sup>2</sup>; hōc autem <sup>6</sup>aeris nostrī summa est sēstertia<sup>7</sup> trecenta duodecim. Super hōc equō dīgnum memoriā vīsum<sup>8</sup> quod, ubi ōrnātus erat armātusque ad proelium, <sup>9</sup>haud unquam inscendī sēsē ab aliō nisi ab 5 rēge passus sit. Id etiam dē istō equō memorātum est, quod<sup>10</sup>, cum insidēns in eō Alexander bellō Indicō et facinora<sup>11</sup> faciēns fortia, in hostium cuneum<sup>12</sup> nōn satis sibi prōvidēns immisisset, coniectisque undique in Alexandrum tēlis, <sup>13</sup>volneribus altis in cervice atque in latere <sup>10</sup> equus perfossus esset<sup>14</sup>, moribundus<sup>15</sup> tamen āc prope iam exsanguis ē mediis hostibus rēgem vīvācissimō<sup>16</sup> cursū rettulit atque, ubi eum extrā<sup>17</sup> tēla extulerat, <sup>18</sup>ilicō con- cidit et <sup>19</sup>dominī iam superstitis sēcūrus quasi cum sēnsūs

1. A Greek compound meaning *ox-head*.

2. sc. *esse*. The subject is *equum* understood.

3. A court officer of Alexander, who wrote a history of his life.

4. A talent is a Grecian measure of value worth about \$1080 in gold.

5. Father of Alexander and king of Macedon, 359-336 B.C.

6. *pecūniae nostrae*.

7. A *sēstertium* = one thousand *sēstertiū*, and a *sēstertius* = 4.1 cents.

8. sc. *est*.

9. *numquam*.

10. *quod* here, as above, introduces a statement of fact, and

is translated by *that* and followed by the indicative. Gellius often uses this construction where the best writers would use the infinitive with subject accusative.

11. *gesta, facta*.

12. Literally a *wedge*, referring to the arrangement of the troops in that form.

13. abl. of means.

14. *had been pierced*.

15. What is the force of the suffix?

16. Ant. *tardissimō*.

17. Ant. *intrā*.

18. Par. *in ipsō tempore in terram dēcidit*.

19. *now assured of his master's safety*.

hūmānī sōlāciō<sup>1</sup> animam exspirāvit. Tum rēx Alexander, partā ēius bellī victōriā, oppidum in eisdem locis condidit idque <sup>2</sup>ob equi honōrēs ‘Būcephalon’ appellāvit.

1. *satisfaction.*

2. *Par. ut equum honōrāret.*

V, 5.

122. Cūiusmodī iocō<sup>1</sup> incavillātus sit<sup>2</sup> Antiochum<sup>3</sup> rēgem  
5 Poenus Hannibal<sup>4</sup>.

In libris veterum memoriārum<sup>5</sup> scriptum est Hannibalem Carthāginiēsem <sup>6</sup>apud rēgem Antiochum facētissimē<sup>7</sup> cavillātum esse. Ea cavillātiō<sup>8</sup> hūiuscemodī fuit: ostendēbat ei Antiochus in campō cōpiās ingentis quās  
10 bellum populō Rōmānō factūrus<sup>9</sup> comparāverat, convertēbatque exercitum insīgnibus argenteis et aureis flōrentem; indūcēbat etiam currūs cum falcibus<sup>10</sup> et elephantōs cum turribus equitātumque frēnis, ephippiis<sup>11</sup>, monilibus<sup>12</sup>, phaleris<sup>13</sup> praefulgentem<sup>14</sup>. Atque ibi rēx, contemplātiōne  
15 tantī ac tam ōrnātī exercitūs glōriābundus, Hannibalem aspicit et “Putāsne,” inquit, “cōferri<sup>15</sup> posse ac satis

1. cf. Eng. *joke*.

2. *mocked, fooled.*

3. Antiochus the Great, king of Syria, 223–187 B.C.

4. The great general who for sixteen years defied the power of Rome. After his final defeat he fled for refuge to the court of Antiochus (195 B.C.), whom he persuaded to make war upon the Romans.

5. *historiarum.*

6. See idioms.

7. cf. Eng. derivative.

8. *iocus.*

9. Expresses purpose.

10. *scythes.*

11. *saddles.*

12. *necklaces.*

13. *breast decorations.*

14. *prae* in composition very often simply strengthens the meaning of the word; *prae*fulgēns = *brilliantly shining.*

15. *be compared.*

esse Rōmānīs haec omnia?" Tum Poenus, ēlūdēns<sup>1</sup> ignāviā imbelliamque<sup>2</sup> mīlitum ēius pretiōsē<sup>3</sup> armātōrum: "Satis, plānē satis esse crēdō Rōmānīs haec omnia, etiam sī avāriissimī sunt." Nihil prōsum<sup>4</sup> neque<sup>5</sup> tam lepidē<sup>6</sup> neque tam acerbē dicī potest: rēx dē numerō 5 exercitūs suī āc <sup>7</sup>dē aestimandā aequiperātiōne quaesiverat, respondit Hannibal dē praedā.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>sneering at.</i>   | negation is not destroyed by succeeding negatives, each introducing a separate subordinate member. |
| 2. A post-Augustan word derived from <i>imbellis</i> = <i>nōn aptus bellō.</i> |  |
| 3. <i>sūmptuōsē, ēleganter.</i>  | 6. <i>neatly.</i>  |
| 4. <i>at all.</i>  | 7. <i>whether it could be considered on an equality.</i>   |
| 5. Remember that a general   |  |

## V, 9.

123. **Historia de Croesī<sup>1</sup> filiō mūtō ex Hērodoti<sup>2</sup> librīs.**

Filius Croesī rēgis, cum iam fārī <sup>3</sup>per aetātem posset, infāns erat et, cum iam multum adolēvisset, item nihil 10 fārī quibat<sup>4</sup>. Mūtus adeō<sup>5</sup> et ēlinguis<sup>6</sup> diū habitus est. <sup>7</sup>Cum in patrem ēius<sup>8</sup>, bellō māgnō victum et urbe<sup>9</sup> in quā erat captā, hostis gladiō dēductō, rēgem esse ignōrāns, invāderet<sup>10</sup>, didūxit<sup>11</sup> adulēscēns ōs, clāmāre nitēns,

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. King of Lydia, 560-546 B.C. His name has become synonymous with boundless wealth. | 6. Note the etymology.   |
| 2. The famous Greek historian known as the "father of history." He was born 484 B.C. | 7. Or. <i>Cum hostis gladiō dēductō, rēgem esse ignōrāns, in patrem ēius, bellō māgnō victum et urbe in quā erat captā, invāderet, adulēscēns ōs didūxit, etc.</i> |
| 3. <i>so far as his age was concerned.</i>   | 8. <i>ēius</i> refers to <i>adulēscēns</i> .   |
| 4. <i>poterat.</i>   | 9. <i>viz. Sardis.</i>   |
| 5. <i>indeed, strengthens mūtus.</i>   | 10. <i>impetum faceret.</i>  |
|  | 11. <i>Ant. clausit.</i>   |

eōque nīsū<sup>1</sup> atque impetū spīritūs vitium<sup>2</sup> nōdumque  
linguae rūpit plānēque et articulātē ēlocūtus est, clāmāns  
in hostem nē rēx Croesus occiderētur. Tum et hostis  
gladium redūxit et rēx vitā dōnātus est et adulēscēns  
5 loquī <sup>3</sup>prōrsūm deinceps incēpit. Hērodotus in Historiīs  
hūius memoriae scriptor est, ēiusque verba sunt quae  
prīma dixisse filium Croesī refert<sup>4</sup>: <sup>5</sup>Ἀνθρωπε, μὴ κτείνε  
Κροῖσον.

Sed et quispiam<sup>6</sup> Samius<sup>7</sup> āthlēta, nōmen illī fuit  
10 Ἐχεκλούς<sup>8</sup>, cum anteā nōn loquēns fuisset, ob similem  
dīcitur causam loquī coepisse. Nam cum in sacrō cer-  
tāmine sortitiō<sup>9</sup> inter ipsōs et adversāriōs nōn bonā fidē  
fieret et sortem nōminis<sup>10</sup> falsam subici<sup>11</sup> animadvertisset,  
repente in eum quī id faciēbat, vidēre sēsē quid faceret,  
15 māgnū<sup>12</sup> inclāmāvit. Atque is ōris vinculō solūtus <sup>13</sup>per  
omne inde vitae tempus <sup>14</sup>nōn turbidē neque adhaesē locū-  
tus est.

1. cōnātū.

2. impedīmentum.

3. right along thereafter.

4. nārrat.

5. Cavē, homō, nē Croesum  
occīdās.

6. quīdam.

7. Samos is a large island in  
the Aegean Sea.

8. Echeclūs.

9. a casting of lots (sortēs).  
The lots were usually bits ofwood containing the names of  
the contestants.10. gen. of specification de-  
pending on falsam, A. 218 c;  
H. 399, III, 1.

11. being substituted.

12. māgnā vōce.

13. Par. prōrsūm deinceps,  
see l. 5.14. Par. plānē et articulātē,  
cf. l. 2.

## VI,

124. Historia dē Polō histriōne<sup>1</sup> memorātū digna.

Histriō in terrā Graeciā fuit fāmā celebri, quī <sup>2</sup>gestūs et vōcis clāritūdine et venustāte cēteris antistābat<sup>3</sup>: nōmen fuisse āiunt Polum, tragoediās poētārum nōbīlium scitē atque adsevērātē<sup>4</sup> āctitāvit<sup>5</sup>. Is Polus ūnicē amātum filium morte āmisit. Eum lūctum<sup>6</sup> quoniam satis vīsus 5 est ēlūxisse<sup>7</sup>, rediit ad quaestum artis.

In eō tempore Athēnis Ēlectram<sup>8</sup> Sophoclis<sup>9</sup> āctūrus, gestāre urnam quasi cum Orestī ossibus dēbēbat. <sup>10</sup>Ita compositum fābulae argūmentum est ut <sup>11</sup>velutī frātris reliquiās ferēns Ēlectra complōret commisereāturque <sup>12</sup>in- 10 teritum ēius exīstimātum. Igitur Polus, lūgubri habitū Ēlectrae indūtus<sup>13</sup>, ossa atque urnam ē sepulcrō tulit fili et, quasi Orestī amplexus, opplēvit omnia nōn simulācris neque imitāmentīs, sed lūctū atque lāmentis <sup>14</sup>vērīs et spirantibus. Itaque cum agī fābula vidērētur, <sup>15</sup>dolor 15 āctus est.

1. actor.

2. Or. *venustāte gestūs et clāritūdine vōcis*.

3. *praestābat, superior erat*.

4. *earnestly*.

5. What is the force of the suffix?

6. Ant. *gaudium*. For construction, see Introduction, IV, 16, 4, c.

7. *to have finished mourning over*.

8. In the play a funeral urn is brought to the heroine, Elec-

tra, which is supposed to contain the ashes of her brother Orestes.

9. The greatest of Greek tragedians, 495-406 B.C.

10. Or. *argūmentum fābulae ita compositum est*.

11. *velutī . . . ferēns = believing that she is carrying*.

12. Par. *mortem ēius crēditam*.

13. *vestītus, amictus*.

14. The adjectives modify *lūctū* as well as *lāmentīs*.

15. *real sorrow*.

## VI, 18.

125. Dē observatā custōditāque apud Rōmānōs iūris iūrandī sānctimōniā; <sup>2</sup>atque inibi dē decem captivīs, quōs Rōmam Hannibal dēiūriō<sup>3</sup> ab hīs acceptō lēgavit<sup>4</sup>.

Iūs iūrandum apud Rōmānōs inviolatē sānctēque habi-  
5 tum servātumque est. Id et mōribus lēgibusque multīs ostenditur, et hōc quod dicēmus eī rei nōn tenue argū-  
mentum esse potest. Post proelium Cannēse<sup>5</sup> Hannibal, Carthāginiēnsium imperātor, ex captivīs nostris ēlēctōs  
decem Rōmam misit mandāvitque eīs <sup>6</sup>pactusque est ut,  
10 sī populō Rōmānō vidērētur, permūtatiō fieret captivōrum  
et <sup>7</sup>prō hīs quōs alteri plūrēs acciperent, darent argenti  
pondō libram et sēlibram<sup>8</sup>. Hōc, priusquam proficisce-  
rentur, iūs iūrandum eōs adēgit<sup>9</sup>, reditūrōs esse in castra  
Poenica, sī Rōmāni captivōs nōn permūtārent.

15 Veniunt Rōmam decem captivī. Mandātum Poenī  
imperātōris in senātū expōnunt. Permūtatiō senātūi  
nōn placita<sup>10</sup>. Parentēs, <sup>11</sup>cōgnātī adfinēsque captivōrum  
amplexī eōs, postliminiō<sup>12</sup> in patriam redisse dicēbant sta-

1. Remember that a perfect participle is often best translated by a participial or verbal noun with *of*.

2. See 111, n. 1.

3. Found only in Gellius = *iūre iūrandō*.

4. *lēgātōs misit*.

5. The battle of Cannae (216 B.C.), in which the Romans suffered a most disastrous defeat.

6. Par. *pactum fēcit*. cf. Eng. *com-pact*.

7. *in return for those whom*

*either party should receive in excess (of the other)*.

8. *a half-pound*.

9. *to bind some one by an oath* is usually expressed *iūre iūrandō aliquem adigere*, but here *adigō* takes two accusatives.

10. *sc. est*.

11. *kinsmen and relatives*.

12. *by the right of postliminium*. By this is meant the right to resume one's former place in civil affairs.

tumque eōrum integrum incolumemque esse, āc nē ad hostēs redire vellent ōrābant. Tum octō ex his postliminium iūstum nōn esse sibi respondērunt quoniam dē-iūriō vinctī forent<sup>1</sup>, statimque, uti iūrātī erant<sup>2</sup>, ad Hannibalem profectī sunt. Duo reliquī Rōmae mānsērunt solūtōsque<sup>3</sup> esse sē āc liberātōs religiōne<sup>4</sup> dicēbant, quoniam, cum ēgressī castra<sup>5</sup> hostium fuissent, commentiō<sup>6</sup> cōnsiliō regressī eōdem<sup>7</sup>, tamquam sī ob aliquam fortuitam causam, issent atque ita iūre iūrāndō satisfactō rūrsūm iniūrātī<sup>8</sup> abissent. Haec eōrum fraudulenta<sup>9</sup> calliditās<sup>10</sup> tam esse turpis existimāta est, ut contempti volgō<sup>11</sup> discerptique<sup>12</sup> sint cēnsōrēsque eōs postea omnium notārum<sup>13</sup> et damnīs et ignōminiis adfēcerint, quoniam<sup>14</sup> quod factūrōs dēierāverant nōn fēcissent.

1. *adūctī essent.*

2. A deponent verb.

3. Ant. *vinctōs.*4. *iūre iūrāndō.*5. Object of *ēgressī fuissent*, which is used transitively.6. *devised, false, preconcerted.*7. An adv. = *in eundem locum.*8. Ant. *iūrātī.*14. Par. *quod sē factūrōs esse pactī erant.*

9. What is the force of the suffix?

10. *cunning.*11. Par. *ab omnibus.*12. *reviled.*13. *nota* = *sign* or *mark*, is here used of the mark against the name of a degraded citizen on the censor's list.

## VII, 17.

126. Quis omnium primus librōs pūblicē praeberit<sup>1</sup> legendōs<sup>2</sup>; quantusque numerus fuerit Athēnis <sup>3</sup>ante clādēs Persicās librōrum in bibliothēcis pūblicis.

Librōs Athēnis disciplinārum liberālium pūblicē ad  
5 legendum praeberendōs primus posuisse dicitur Pisistratus<sup>4</sup> tyrannus. Postea studiōsius accūrātiusque ipsi Athēniēnsēs auxērunt<sup>5</sup>; sed omnem illam postea librōrum cōpiam Xerxēs<sup>6</sup>, Athēnārum potitus<sup>7</sup>, urbe ipsā praeter arcem incēnsā, abstulit asportāvitque<sup>8</sup> in Persās.  
10 Eōs porrō<sup>9</sup> librōs ūiversōs multis post tempestātibus Seleucus<sup>10</sup> rēx, quī Nicātor appellātus est, referendōs Athēnās cūrāvit<sup>11</sup>.

Ingēns postea numerus librōrum in Aegyptō ab Ptolemaeis<sup>12</sup> rēgibus <sup>13</sup>vel conquisitus vel cōfectus est ad milia  
15 fermē volūminum septingenta; sed ea omnia bellō priōre Alexandrinō<sup>14</sup>, dum diripitur ea civitās, nōn sponte neque

1. *dederit.*

2. Remember that after verbs of giving, permitting, and the like, the gerundive in agreement with the object is used to express purpose.

3. *Par. ante bella Persica.*

4. Tyrant of Athens, 560–527 B.C. He adorned Athens with many beautiful public buildings and did much to encourage literature.

5. *sc. numerum librōrum* as object.

6. The famous invasion of Xerxes was in 480 B.C.

7. *potior* often takes the genitive.

8. *For abs-portāvit.*

9. *postea, deinde.*

10. One of Alexander's generals and founder of the Syrian monarchy, reigned 312–280 B.C.

11. *cūrō* is used with the accusative and gerundive expressing purpose in the sense of *to see to, order.*

12. This applies especially to Ptolemy Soter (323–285 B.C.), and to his son Ptolemy Philadelphus (285–247 B.C.).

13. *either collected or made.*

14. 48–47 B.C.



operā cōsultā, sed ā militibus forte auxiliāribus incēnsa sunt<sup>1</sup>.

1. The library was soon re-  
stored and continued in a flour-  
ishing condition until destroyed  
by the Arabs, 640 A.D.

## IX, 3.

127. Epistula Philippī<sup>1</sup> rēgis ad Aristotelem<sup>2</sup> philosophum  
super Alexandrō<sup>3</sup> recēns<sup>4</sup> nātō.

Philippus, Amyntae<sup>5</sup> filius, terrae Macedoniae rēx, 5  
cūius virtūte industriāque Macetae<sup>6</sup>, locuplētissimō<sup>7</sup> im-  
periō aucti, <sup>8</sup>gentium nātiōnumque multārum potiri coepe-  
rant et cūius vim atque arma tōti Graeciae <sup>9</sup>cavenda  
metuendaque inclutae<sup>10</sup> illae Dēmostenis<sup>11</sup> ōrātiōnēs cōn-  
tīōnēsque<sup>12</sup> vōcificant<sup>13</sup>, is Philippus, cum in omnī ferē 10  
tempore negōtiis bellī victōriisque adfectus exercitusque<sup>14</sup>  
esset, ā liberālī tamen Mūsā et ā studiis hūmānitātis

1. See p. 125, l. 2.

2. See p. 122, l. 6. Alexander became the pupil of Aristotle and had the highest regard for him.

3. Alexander the Great (356-323 B.C.), the well-known conqueror of the world.

4. An adverb = *recenter*, *nūper*.

5. King of Macedon, 393-369 B.C.

6. *Macedonēs*.

7. *dītissimō*.

8. The genitives depend upon *potiri*.

9. sc. *esse*. The participles agree with *vim atque arma*. The infinitives depend upon *vōcificant*.

10. *clārae*.

11. The reference is to the famous orations known as the Philippics and Olynthiacs, by means of which Demosthenes vainly strove to resist the aggressions of Philip.

12. *harangues*.

13. *dēmōnstrant, dēclārant*.

14. A perf. part. used as a predicate adjective = *vexātus*.

numquam āfuit quīn<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>lepidē cōmiterque plēraque et  
 faceret et diceret. Feruntur adeō<sup>3</sup> librī epistolārum ēius,  
 munditiae<sup>4</sup> et venustātis et prūdentiae plēnārum, velut  
 5 sunt illae litterae quibus Aristotelī philosophō nātum esse  
 sibi Alexandrum nūntiāvit.

Ea epistula, quoniam <sup>5</sup>cūrae diligentiaeque in liberōrum  
 disciplinās hortāmentum<sup>6</sup> est, exscribenda visa est ad com-  
 monendōs parentum animōs. Expōnenda<sup>7</sup> est igitur ad  
 hanc fermē sententiam :

10 " Philippus Aristoteli <sup>8</sup>salūtem dicit.

Filium mihi genitum scitō. Quod<sup>9</sup> equidem dis habeo  
 grātiam<sup>10</sup>, nōn <sup>11</sup>proinde quia nātus est quam prō eō, quod  
 nāscī contigit temporibus vitāe tuae. Spērō enim fore  
 ut, ēductus ēruditusque ā tē, dignus existat et nōbīs et  
 15 <sup>12</sup>rērum istārum susceptiōne."

1. *ut nōn.*

2. *neatly and courteously.*

3. *vērō.*

4. *ēlegantiae.*

5. Objective genitives de-  
 pending on *hortāmentum*.

6. What is the force of the  
 suffix *-mentum* ?

7. *reddenda.* Philip natu-  
 rally wrote in Greek.

8. See idioms.

9. acc. of specification, lit-  
 erally *as to which*.

10. See idioms.

11. *proinde . . . quam = aequē*  
 or *pariter . . . āc.*

12. Par. *suī rēgnī.*

N. B. The remaining selections have for their purpose a final test of the ability to read at sight. They are not more difficult than those immediately preceding, but the accompanying notes contain no information bearing directly upon the translation.

## X, 7.

**128. Flūminum quae ūltrā imperium Rōmānum fluunt primā māgnitūdine esse Nilum, secundā Histrum<sup>1</sup>, proximā Rhodanum, sicuti M. Varrōnem<sup>2</sup> meminī scribere.**

Omnium flūminum quae in maria, quā imperium Rōmānum est, fluunt, quam<sup>3</sup> Graeci <sup>4</sup>τὴν εἴσω θάλασσαν appell- 5  
lant, māximum esse Nilum cōsentitur. Proximā māgnitūdine esse Histrum scripsit Sallustius<sup>5</sup>. Varrō autem cum dē parte orbis quae Eurōpa dicitur, dissereret, in tribus primis eius terrae flūminibus Rhodanum esse pōnit, per quod vidētur eum facere Histrō aemulum. Histros 10  
enim quoque in Eurōpā fluit.

1. The Danube.

2. See p. 109, l. 5.

3. The relative is here attracted to agree with *θάλασσαν*.

4. *The inner sea*, i.e. the Mediterranean.

5. C. Sallustius Crispus, the Roman historian, 86–34 B.C.

## X, 10.

**129. Quae eius rei causa sit quod et Graeci veterēs et Rōmāni ānulum hōc digitō gestāverint quī est in manū sinistrā minimō proximus.**

Veterēs Graecōs ānulum habuisse in digitō accēpimus 15  
sinistrae manūs quī minimō est proximus. Rōmānōs quoque hominēs aiunt sic plērumque ānulis ūsitātōs. Causam esse hūius rei Apiōn<sup>1</sup> in libris Aegyptiacis hanc

1. Apion, a Greek grammarian, was born in Egypt and studied at Alexandria. He

taught rhetoric at Rome in the first century A.D. His work on Egypt was in five books.

dicit, quod insectis apertisque hūmānis corporibus, ut mōs in Aegyptō fuit, quās Graeci *ἀνατομὰς*<sup>1</sup> appellant, repertum est nervum quendam tenuissimum ab eō ūnō digitō dē quō diximus, ad cor hominis pergere ac per-  
 5 venīre; proptereā nōn inscītum vīsum esse eum potissimum digitum tāli honōre decorandum, quī continēns et quasi cōnexus esse cum principātū cordis vidērētur.

1. *dissection.*

## X, 27.

130. **Historia dē populō Rōmānō dēque populō Poenicō, quod parī prope modum vigōre fuerint aemulī.**

10 In litteris veteribus memoria exstat quod pār quondam fuit vigor et ācritūdō amplitūdōque populī Rōmānī atque Poenī. Neque immeritō aestimātum. Cum aliis quidem populis dē ūniuscūiusque rē pūblicā, cum Poenis autem dē omnium terrārum imperiō dēcertātum.

15 Eius rei specimen est in illō utriusque populī verbō factōque: Q. Fabius<sup>1</sup>, imperātor Rōmānus, dedit ad Carthāginiēnsēs epistulam. Ibi scīptum fuit populum Rōmānum mīsisse ad eōs hastam et cādūceum<sup>2</sup>, signa duo bellī aut pācis, ex quīs<sup>3</sup> utrum vellent ēligere; quod  
 20 quod ēlēgissent, id ūnum ut esse mīssum exīstimārent. Carthāginiēnsēs respondērunt neutrum sēsē ēligere; sed posse, quī attulissent, utrum māllent relinquere; quod reliquissent, id sibi prō ēlēctō futurum.

1. Quintus Fabius Maximus was most active against Hannibal in the Second Punic War. His extreme caution gave him the surname of Cunctator, or Delayer. He died 203 B.C.

2. The *caduceus* was a herald's staff, originally an olive branch, and hence a sign of peace.

3. A contraction for *quibus*.

M. autem Varrō<sup>1</sup> nōn hastam ipsam neque ipsum cādū-  
ceum missa dicit, sed duās tesserulās, in quārum alterā  
cādūceum in alterā hastae simulācra fuerint incisa.

1. See selection 111, n. 2.

XI, 14.

131. Sōbria et pulcherrima Rōmulī<sup>1</sup> rēgis respōnsiō circā  
vinī ūsum.

5

Simplicissimā suāvitāte et rei et ōrātiōnis L. Pisō  
Frūgī<sup>2</sup> ūsus est in primō Annālī, cum dē Rōmulī rēgis  
vitā atque victū scriberet. Ea verba quae scripsit haec  
sunt: Eundem Rōmulum dīcunt, ad cēnam vocātum, ibi  
nōn multum bibisse, quia postridiē negōtium habēret. Eī  
dicunt: "Rōmule, sī istud omnēs hominēs faciant, vinum  
vilis sit." His respondit: "Immō vērō cārum, sī quan-  
tum quisque volet bibat; nam egō bibī quantum volūi."

1. Romulus, the chief founder and first king of Rome, 753 B.C. cause of his integrity, was tribune 149 B.C. His Annals contained the history of Rome from the earliest period to his own age.

2. Lucius Piso, surnamed Frugi, or 'man of honor,' be-

XII, 8.

132. Reditiōnēs in grātiām nōbīlium virōrum memorātū  
dīgnae.

15

P. Āfricānus<sup>1</sup> superior et Tiberius Gracchus<sup>2</sup>, Tiberi

1. This refers to Scipio Africanus Major, born 234 B.C. He was unquestionably one of the greatest men of Rome. His greatest exploit was his brilliant victory over Hannibal, 202 B.C. See pp. 69-87.

2. Tiberius Gracchus, a distinguished general who won renown in Spain and Sardinia. He was tribune, praetor, censor, and twice consul. His public life was embraced between the years 187 and 163 B.C.

et C. Gracchōrum<sup>1</sup> pater, rērum gestārum māgnitūdine et honōrum atque vitae dignitate inlūstrēs viri, dissēnsērunt saepenumerō dē rē pūblicā et eā sive quā aliā rē nōn amīci fuērunt. Ea simultās cum diū mānsisset et  
 5 sollemnī diē epulum Iovī libārētur atque ob id sacrificium senātus in Capitōliō epulārētur, fors fuit ut apud eandem mēnsam duo illi iūctim locārentur. Tum, quasi diis immortālibus arbitris in conviviō Iovis optimi māximī dexterās eōrum condūcentibus, repente amīcissimī facti.  
 10 Neque solum amicitia incepta, sed adfinitās simul institūta; nam P. Scipiō filiam virginem habēns iam virō mātūram, ibi tunc eōdem in locō dēspondit eam Tiberiō Gracchō, quem probāverat ēlēgeratque explōrātissimō iūdicī tempore dum inimicus esset.  
 15 Aemilius quoque Lepidus<sup>2</sup> et Fulvius Flaccus<sup>3</sup>, nōbili genere amplissimisque honōribus ac summō locō in civitāte praediti, odiō inter sēsē gravī et simultāte diūtinā cōnfectātī sunt. Postea populus eōs simul cēnsōrēs facit. Atque illi, ubi vōce praecōnis renūntiātī sunt, ibidem in  
 20 Campō<sup>4</sup> statim, nōndum dīmissā cōntiōne, ūltrō uterque et parī voluntāte coniūctī complexique sunt, exque eō

1. These are the famous tribunes who gave their lives in a vain attempt to redress the wrongs of the people. Tiberius was killed by a mob, 133 B.C., Caius, 121 B.C.

2. A distinguished Roman who died 152 B.C., full of years and honors.

3. Gellius is mistaken in the man. It should be M. Fulvius

Nobilior, who was censor with Lepidus, 179 B.C. Livy, the Roman historian, tells this story about them, Bk. XL, 45 and 46.

4. The Campus Martius, a large plain outside the city walls in the bend of the Tiber, northwest of the Capitoline. It was used for elections and large assemblies.

diē et in ipsā cēnsūrā et postea iūgī concordīā fidissimē amīcissimēque vīxērunt.

## XIII, 2.

**133. Super poētārum Pācuvī<sup>1</sup> et Accī<sup>2</sup> conloquiō familiārī in oppidō Tarentinō.**

Quibus ōtium et studium fuit vītās atque aetātēs doc- 5  
tōrum hominum quaerere ac memoriae trādere, dē M. Pācuvīō et L. Acciō tragicis poētis historiam scripsērunt hūiuscemodi: "Cum Pācuvius," inquit, "grandī iam aetāte et morbō corporis diūtīnō adfectus, Tarentum<sup>3</sup> ex urbe Rōmā concessisset, Accius tunc, haud parvō 10 iūnior, proficiscēns in Asiam, cum in oppidum vēnisset, dēvertit ad Pācuvium cōmiterque invitātus plūsculisque ab eō diēbus retentus, tragoediam suam, cui Atreus nōmen est, dēsideranti lēgit." Tum Pācuvium dixisse āiunt sonōra quidem esse quae scripsisset, et grandia; 15 sed vidēri tamen ea sibi dūriōra paulum et acerbiōra. "Ita est," inquit Accius, "utī dīcis; neque id mē sānē paenitet: meliōra enim fore spērō quae postea scribam. Nam quod in pōmis, itidem," inquit, "esse āiunt in ingeniis; quae dūra et acerba nāscuntur, post fiunt mītia et 20 iūcunda; sed quae gīgnuntur statim viēta et mollia atque in princīpiō sunt ūvida, nōn mātūra mox fiunt, sed putria.

1. See p. 114, l. 5.

2. Lucius Accius, an early Roman tragic poet, was born 170 B.C. We possess only fragments of his tragedies, but they

are spoken of in terms of admiration by the ancient writers.

3. A large city in southern Italy.

<sup>1</sup>Relinquendum igitur visum est in ingeniō quod diēs atque aetās mītificet.”

1. Dr. Knapp, in his edition of Gellius, aptly quotes as follows from a modern critic: “The young man whose essay shows

nothing turgid, no ungraceful ornament or flashy rhetoric, will never do much as a writer.”

XV, 16.

**134. Dē novō genere interitūs Crotōniēnsis Milōnis.**

Milō<sup>1</sup> Crotōniēnsis<sup>2</sup>, āthlēta inlūstris, quem in Chroni-  
 ; cīs scīptum est <sup>3</sup>Olympiade LXII primum corōnātum  
 esse, exitum habuit ē vitā miserandum et mirandum.  
 Cum iam nātū grandis artem āthlētīcam dēsisset iterque  
 faceret forte sōlus in locīs Ītaliae silvestribus, quercum  
 vidit proximē viam patulis in parte mediā rīmīs hiantem.  
 10 Tum experiri, crēdō, etiam tunc volēns, an ūllae sibi  
 reliquae virēs adessent, immissis in cavernās arboris  
 digitis, didūcere et rescindere quercum cōnātus est.  
 Āc mediam quidem partem discidit dīvellitque; quercus  
 autem in duās diducta partis, cum ille, quasi perfectō

1. Milo was one of the most famous athletes of ancient times. He was six times victor in wrestling at the Olympic games and six times at the Pythian. His bodily strength was extraordinary, and many stories are told of his wonderful feats, such as carrying a heifer of four years old on his shoulder through the stadium at Olympia.

2. Croton, or Crotona, was one of the largest and most pow-

erful towns in southern Italy. It owed much of its greatness to Pythagoras, the famous philosopher, who established his school here.

3. The Olympic games were first celebrated 776 B.C., and thereafter every fourth year. The intervening four years was called an Olympiad. The LXII Olympiad, therefore, would be the years 532-528 B.C.



quod erat cōnixus, manūs laxāset, cessante vī rediit in nātūram, manibusque ēius retentis inclūsisque, stricta dēnuō et cohaesa dilacerandum hominem feris praebuilt.

## XV, 18.

135. Quod pūgna<sup>1</sup> bellī cīvilis victōriaque Gāi Caesaris quam vīcit in Pharsāliis campīs, nūntiāta praedictaque est per cūiuspiam sacerdotis vāticinium eōdem ipsō diē in Ītaliā Patavī<sup>2</sup>. 5

Quō C. Caesar et Cn. Pompēius diē per cīvile bellum signis conlātis in Thessaliā cōnflīxērunt, rēs accidit Patavī in Trānspadāna Ītaliā memorārī digna. Cornēlius quīdam sacerdos, et nōbilis et sacerdoti religiōnibus venerandus et castitāte vitae sāctus, repente <sup>3</sup>mōtā mente, cōnspicere sē procul dixit pūgnam ācerrimam pūgnārī, āc deinde aliōs cēdere aliōs urgēre, caedem, fugam, tēla volantia, instaurātiōnem pūgnae, impressiōnem, gemitūs, 15 volnera, proinde ut sī ipse in proeliō versārētur, cōram vidēre sēsē vōciferātus est āc postea subitō exclāmāvit Caesarem vīcisse.

Ea Cornēli sacerdotis hariolātiō levis tum quidem visa est et vēcors. Māgnae mox admirātiōni fuit quoniam 20 nōn modo pūgnae diēs quae in Thessaliā pūgnāta est, neque proeli exitus quī erat praedictus, idem fuit, sed omnēs quoque pūgnandī vicissitudinēs et ipsa exercituum

1. This refers to the battle of Pharsalia in Thessaly, 48 B.C., in which Caesar defeated Pompey and became master of the world.

2. Patavium, now Padua, was, under the Romans, the most important city in northern Italy.

3. The ancients believed that the minds of men could be moved or inspired by the gods to prophesy. This was called *vāticinium* or *hariolātiō*.

duōrum cōnflctātiō vāticinantis mōtū atque verbis re-  
praesentāta est.

## XVII, 17.

136. Mithradātem<sup>1</sup>, Pontī rēgem, duārum et vīgintī gentium  
linguis locūtum; Quintumque Ennium<sup>2</sup> tria corda habere  
5 sēsē dīxisse quod trīs linguās scīret, Graecam, Oscam,  
Latinam.

Quintus Ennius tria corda habere sēsē dicēbat quod  
loqui Graecē et Oscē et Latinē scīret. Mithradātēs  
autem, <sup>3</sup>Pontī atque Bithŷniae rēx inclutus, quī ā Cn.  
10 Pompēiō bellō superātus est, duārum et vīgintī gentium  
quās sub diciōne habuit, linguīs locūtus est eārumque  
omnium gentium cum virīs haud umquam per interpretem  
conlocūtus est, sed ut quemque ab eō appellārī ūsus fuit,  
proinde linguā et ōrātiōne ipsius nōn minus scītē quam  
15 sī gentilis ēius esset, locūtus est.

1. Mithradates, surnamed the Great, made three wars against the Romans. He was finally subdued by Pompey, 65 B.C. Cicero calls him the greatest of all kings after Alexander.

2. Ennius, 239-169 B.C., was regarded by the Romans as the

father of their poetry. His most important work was an epic poem called the Annals, being a history of Rome. All his works are lost excepting a few fragments.

3. Pontus and Bithynia are provinces in Asia Minor.

## XIX, 3.

137. Quod turpius est frīgidē laudārī quam acerbius  
vituperārī.

Turpius esse dicēbat Favōrinus<sup>1</sup> philosophus exiguē  
atque frīgidē laudārī quam insectanter et graviter vitupe-

1. One of Gellius' teachers, see p. 106.

rārī: "Quoniam," inquit, "qui maledicit et vituperat, quantō id acerbius facit tantō magis ille prō inimicō et iniquō dūcitur, et plērumque, proptereā, fidem nōn capit. Sed quī infēcundē atque iēiunē laudat, dēstitui ā causā vidētur et <sup>1</sup>amicus quidem crēditur ēius quem laudāre 5  
volt, sed nihil posse reperire quod iūre laudet."

1. cf. our expression, 'to damn a friend with faint praise.'

## XX, 7.

**138. Quam diversae Graecōrum sententiae super numerō Niobae<sup>1</sup> filiōrum.**

Mira et prope adeō rīdícula dīversitās fābulae apud Graecōs poētās dēprēnditur super numerō Niobae filiō- 10  
rum. Nam Homērus<sup>2</sup> puerōs puellāsque ēius bis sēnōs dicit fuisse, Eurīpidēs<sup>3</sup> bis septēnōs, Sapphō<sup>4</sup> bis novēnōs, Bacchylidēs<sup>5</sup> et Pindarus<sup>6</sup> bis dēnōs, quīdam aliī scriptōrēs trēs fuisse sōlōs dixērunt.

1. Niobe, the wife of Am-  
phion, the king of Thebes, being  
proud of the number of her chil-  
dren, deemed herself superior to  
Latona, who had but two, Apol-  
lo and Diana. As a punishment  
her children were all killed by  
the shafts of the archer god and  
his sister.

2. Homer, the great epic poet  
of Greece, may have lived about  
900 B.C.

3. Euripides followed Sopho-

cles as the foremost writer of  
Greek tragedy, 480-406 B.C.

4. Sappho, the greatest of an-  
cient poetesses, lived in the sev-  
enth century B.C. and wrote  
lyrics.

5. Bacchylides, one of the  
great lyric poets of Greece, flour-  
ished about 470 B.C.

6. Pindar, the greatest lyric  
poet of Greece, was born about  
522 B.C.

# PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY

OF

## GREEK AND LATIN PROPER NAMES.



N.B. *ae* and *oe* are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation.

### A.

Ac'ci-us (ak'shi-us).  
 A-chil'leş.  
 A-cris'i-us (a-krizh'i-us).  
 Ad-me'ta.  
 Ae'a-cus.  
 Ae'gypt.  
 Ae-gyp'ti-i (e-jip'shi-i).  
 Aem'i-li-a'nus.  
 Ae-mil'i-us.

A-sel'lus.  
 A'si-a (a'shi-a).  
 A'si-at'i-cus.  
 A-te'i-us (a-te'yus).  
 A-ter'ni-us.  
 A-til'i-us.  
 At'las.  
 A'treus.  
 Au-g'e'as.  
 Au'lus.

Cel'ti-be'ri.  
 Ce-nae'us.  
 Cen-tau'rus.  
 Ce'pheus.  
 Cer'be-ruş.  
 Ce'reş.  
 Cha'reş.  
 Cha'ron.  
 Ciç'e-ro.  
 Clau'di-us.  
 Clys'e-a.

### B.

Ae-thi'o-peş.  
 Af'ri-ca'nus.  
 Al'ci-bi'a-deş.  
 Alc-me'na.  
 Al'ex-an'der.  
 Am'a-zon.  
 Am-bra'ci-a (am-bra'shi-a).  
 Am'mon.

Bac-chyl'i-deş.  
 Bag'ra-da.  
 Bib'u-lus.  
 Bi-thyn'i-a.  
 Bu-ceph'a-las.  
 Bu-si'ris.

Cor-ne'li-a.  
 Cor-ne'li-us.  
 Cras'sus.  
 Cre'on.  
 Cre'ta.  
 Croe'sus.  
 Cro-to'na.

### C.

A-myn'tas.  
 An-drom'e-da.  
 An'ti-as (an'shi-as).  
 An-ti'o-chus.  
 A'pi-on.  
 A-pol'lo.  
 Ar-ca'di-a.  
 Ar-gol'i-cus.  
 Ar'go-lis.  
 Ar'is-tot'e-leş.

Ca'cus.  
 Cae'sar.  
 Can'nae.  
 Ca-nu'si-um (ka-nu'zhi-um).  
 Cap'i-to.  
 Cap'i-to'li-um.  
 Car-thag'i-ni-en'seş.  
 Car-tha'go.  
 Ca'to.

### D.

Dan'a-e.  
 De-i'a-ni'ra (de-ya-ni'ra).  
 Del'phi-cuş.  
 De-mos'the-neş.  
 Den-ta'tus.  
 Di-ag'o-ras.  
 Di'o-me'deş.

**E.**

Ech'e-clus.  
 E-lec'tra.  
 E'lis.  
 E-lyſ'i-an (e-lizh'i-an).  
 En'ni-us.  
 Eph'e-sus.  
 Er-gi'nus.  
 Er'y-man'thus.  
 Er'y-thi'a.  
 Eu'no-mus.  
 Eu-rip'i-deſ.  
 Eu-ro'pa.  
 Eu-rys'theus.  
 Eu-ryt'i-on (yu-rish'un).  
 Eu'ry-tus.

**F.**

Fa'bi-a.  
 Fa'bi-us.  
 Fa-bric'i-us (fa-brish'i-us).  
 Fav'o-ri'nus.  
 Flac'cus.  
 Flam'i-ni'nus.  
 Ful'vi-us.  
 Fu'ri-us.

**G.**

Ga'i-us (ga'yus).  
 Gal'ba.  
 Gal'li-a.  
 Gal'lus.  
 Gel'li-us.  
 Ge'ry-on.  
 Gor'go-neſ.  
 Grac'chus.  
 Grae'ae.  
 Grae'ci-a (gre'shi-a).

**H.**

Ha'deſ.  
 Han'ni-bal.  
 Han'no.  
 Has'dru-bal.  
 Her'cu-leſ.  
 He-rod'o-tus.  
 He-si'o-ne.  
 Hes-per'i-deſ.  
 Hip-pol'y-te.  
 His-pa'ni.  
 His-pa'ni-a.  
 His'ter.  
 Hy'dra.  
 Hy-gi'nus.

**I.**

I'o-la'us.  
 I'o-le.  
 Iph'i-cleſ.  
 I-ta'li-a.

**J.**

Ju'li-us.  
 Ju'no.  
 Ju'pi-ter.

**L.**

Laç'e-dae-mo'ni-i.  
 La-co'ni-a.  
 Lae'li-us.  
 La-om'e-don.  
 La-ris'sa.  
 Len'tu-lus.  
 Lep'i-dus.  
 Ler'na.  
 Ler-nae'an.  
 Le'the.  
 Lib'y-a.

Li'chas.

Lig'u-reſ.  
 Li-gu'ri-a.  
 li'nus.  
 Lit'er-ni'num.  
 Lu'ci-us (lu'shi-us).  
 Lu-cul'lus.  
 Lus'ci-nus.

**M.**

Maç'e-don.  
 Maç'e-do'ni-a.  
 Maç'e-don'i-cus.  
 Maç'e-tae.  
 Ma-nil'i-us.  
 Mar'ci-us (mar'shi-us).  
 Mar'cus.

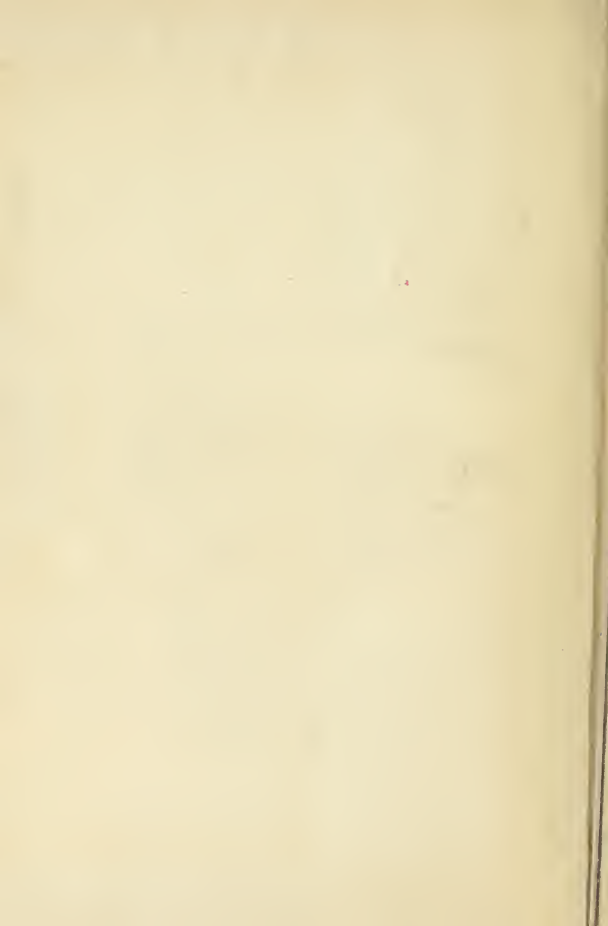
Mars.  
 Mas'i-nis'sa.  
 Mas-si'va.  
 Mau'ri.  
 Me-du'sa.  
 Mer-cu'ri-us.  
 Me-tel'lus.  
 Mi'lo.  
 Mi-ner'va.  
 Mi'nos.  
 Min'y-ae.  
 Mith'ra-da'teſ.  
 Mum'mi-us.

**N.**

Nae'vi-us.  
 Ne-mae'a.  
 Nep-tu'nus.  
 Ne'ro.  
 Nes'sus.  
 Ni-ca'nor.

Niç'i-as (nish'i-as).	Po-lyc'ri-ta.	Spu'ri-us.
Ni'lus.	Pol'y-dec'teş.	Stym-pha'lus.
Ni'o-be.	Pom-pe'i-us (-yus).	Sul-pic'i-us (sul-pish'i-us).
Nu-man'ti-a (nu-man'shi-a).	Pon'tus.	Su-per'bus.
Nu'man-ti'ni.	Por'ci-us (por'shi-us).	Sy'phax.
Nu'mi-da.	Prae'tex-ta'tus.	Syr'a-cuse.
Nu-mid'i-a.	Pro-ser'pi-na.	Syr'i-a.
<b>O.</b>	Ptol'e-my (tol'e-my).	<b>T.</b>
O-ce'a-nus.	Pub'li-us.	Taen'a-rum.
Oe-cha'li-a.	Pyr'rhus.	Tar-pe'i-us (-yus).
Oe'neus.	Pyth'i-a.	Tar-quin'i-us.
Oe'ta.	<b>Q.</b>	Tar'ta-rus.
O-lym'pi-a.	Quad'ri-ga'ri-us.	Ter'ti-a (ter'shi-a).
O-lym'pus.	Quin'tus.	The'bae.
Or'cus.	Qui-ri'teş.	The-ba'ni.
O-res'teş.	<b>R.</b>	Ther-mo'don.
Os'can.	Reg'u-lus.	Thes-sa'li-a.
<b>P.</b>	Rhad'a-man'thus.	Thra'ci-a (thra'shi-a).
Pa-cu'vi-us.	Rhod'a-nus.	Tib'e-ris.
Pa-pir'i-us.	Ru-fi'nus.	Ti-be'ri-us.
Pa-ta'vi-um.	<b>S.</b>	Ti-ci'nus.
Pau'lus.	Sal-lus'ti-us.	Ti-moch'a-reş.
Per'sa.	Sam-ni'teş.	Ti'ro.
Per'seus.	Sam'o-thra'ce.	Ti'ryns.
Phar-sa'li-a.	Sap'pho (saf'o).	Tro'ja.
Phi-lip'pi.	Scip'i-o.	Tro-ja'ni.
Phi-lip'pi-deş.	Se-leu'cus.	Tul'li-us.
Phi-lip'pus.	Se'na.	Tus'cu-lum.
Phi'lus.	Sen'e-ca.	<b>V.</b>
Pho'lus.	Se-ri'phus.	Vol-ca'nus.
Pin'da-rus.	Sib'yl-li'ni.	<b>X.</b>
Pi-sis'tra-tus.	Si-cil'i-a.	Xan-thip'pe.
Plau'tus.	Si-cin'i-us.	Xan-thip'pus.
Plu'to.	Sic'u-li.	Xerx'eş.
Poe'ni.	Soc'ra-teş.	<b>Z.</b>
Po'lus.	Soph'o-cleş.	Za'ma.
Po-lyb'i-us.		







PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

PA  
2095  
B64

D'Ooge, Benjamin Leonard  
Easy Latin for sight  
reading for secondary schools

